

GAMES  
WORKSHOP®

NEW! THE BATTLE FOR MACRAGGE!

# WHITE DWARF

Featuring

THE  
**LORD OF THE RINGS**  
STRATEGY BATTLE GAME™

WHITE DWARF 298  
OCTOBER 2004

Aus\$9.95 NZ\$11.95

GAMES WORKSHOP'S MONTHLY MAGAZINE



5 011921 919864

WD2.98 White Dwarf 2 154708



GW-ACC 000892

S 040923

ELLISON  
HAWKER

\$9.95  
GST incl.



## editorial

This month sees the release of the Battle for Macragge boxed set. During our lunch breaks, Tero and I have been playing some of the scenarios and we have been having a great time with these smaller games.

Now is a great time to be a Space Marine player. Many years ago when I started playing, it was the Space Marines that I developed an interest in and now 13 years later, they are still my favourite army for Warhammer 40,000. Next month sees the release of Codex: Space Marines and we have a preview in this month's issue.

For those of you who play Warhammer or The Lord of the Rings, don't worry. We have not forgotten you and have some great articles.

You may remember the Great White Dwarf Readers survey from earlier on in the year. Well, the surveys have all been entered now and I am working on a strategy for the future of the Australian edition of the White Dwarf based on the results. There are going to be a lot of exciting things I will be doing in the future, from Army of the Month to Battle reports.

Catch you next time.

BOO



**SUBMISSIONS:** All material submitted to us for publication is only accepted on the assumption that the copyright in it is, by the very act of submission, unconditionally assigned by the author as beneficial owner and with full title guaranteed to Games Workshop Limited. We also retain the right to edit and/or amend all material as we see fit. So, if you do not wish to assign copyright in this way, please do not send us your submission. We're afraid we cannot work in any other way!

**CORRESPONDENCE:** We welcome comments about White Dwarf, Games Workshop games and Citadel Miniatures. All letters except subscriptions and Mail Order should be addressed to: The White Dwarf,

Games Workshop, PO Box 576 Ingleburn NSW 1890 Australia.

Please mark your envelope clearly with the name of the game you are writing to us about. If you want a reply you must enclose a self-addressed stamped envelope (overseas readers should include IRCs). We receive an enormous amount of mail. We do read every letter but it may take a little time for us to reply to you, so please be patient! Or you can email us at: [white\\_dwarf@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:white_dwarf@games-workshop.com.au)

You can find Games Workshop on the World Wide Web at the following Internet address: <http://www.games-workshop.com>

**REGISTERED TRADEMARKS:** The following are all registered trademarks of Games Workshop Ltd: Armageddon, Blood Bowl, Chivalry, Citadel, the Citadel logo, Codex, Dark Angels, Dark Future, Deathwing, Dungeonquest, 'Eavy Metal, Eldar, Eldar Attack, Epic, the Games Workshop logo, Games Workshop, the GW logo, The GW Flame logo, Genestealer, Necron, Slottabase, SpaceFleet, Space Hulk, Space Marine, Talisman, Tyrantid, Warhammer and Warmaster.

**TRADEMARKS:** A full list of Games Workshop trademarks can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.games-workshop.com/Legal/legal.htm>

**COPYRIGHTS:** All subject matter in White Dwarf is © Copyright Games Workshop Ltd 2002. All artwork in all Games Workshop products, and all images contained therein have been produced either in-house or as work for hire. The exclusive copyright in the artwork and the images it depicts is the property of Games Workshop Ltd. © Copyright Games Workshop Ltd 2002. All rights reserved.

The Lord of the Rings, The Fellowship of the Ring and the characters and places therein, TM The Saul Zaentz Company d/b/a Tolkien Enterprises under license to New Line Productions, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## contents

## REGULARS

## 01 News

Find out the latest on what's going on in your hobby.

## 03 New Releases

Check out the goodies released this month.

## 56 Preview: And They Shall Know No Fear

We take a sneak peek at the upcoming Space Marine Codex.

## 72 Warhammer Chronicles

This month we have an FAQ for the *Storm Of Chaos* book.

## 76 The Art Of Warhammer: Close Combat

This Close Combat Phase of Warhammer is dissected by Jeff Leong.

## 84 Painting Workshop: Manflayers

Neil Green of the 'Eavy Metal team paints up the new Mengil's Manflayers models.

## 92 Lord Of The Rings

The warriors of the Harad are the focus of this month's *The Lord of the Rings* section.

## FEATURES

## 20 The Battle For Macragge: Painting Space Marines

Steve Cumiskey demonstrates how to paint up our first squad of Space Marines.

## 24 The Battle For Macragge: The Desert

How to go about creating some more terrain for your collection.

## 26 The Battle For Macragge: The Battle Rages On

We introduce some additional scenarios for *The Battle For Macragge*.

## 40 Under The Hood

Just what is a wargame and how does it work? We take a look here.

## 44 Echoes From The Warp

Adrian Wood returns to his beloved Orks and begins anew.

## 48 The Imperium Of Man

The Imperium of Man is immense. Here we take a bit of a closer look.

## 60 Sons Of Guilliman

Troy Forster show off his fantastic Ultramarines army.

## 64 Will Of Iron Conclusion

The final part of Christian Byrne's quest to collect an Iron Warriors army for a tournament.

## 80 Mengil's Manflayers

Anthony Reynolds presents the rule for a new Dogs of War regiment, Mengil's Manflayers.

## 86 To Drink Or To Trample

John Shaffer converts and paints a unit of Centigors.

## BATTLE REPORT

## 06 The Battle For Macragge

Beginners to the hobby, Sean Turtle and Nathan Winter play through some of *The Battle For Macragge* scenarios..



# WHITE DWARF

298 October 2004

Printed at Rotary Offset Press, Australia

## EDITORIAL

**Editor:** Justin Keyes

**Contributors:** Matt Weaver, Bryan Cook, Gavin Thorpe, Alessio Cavatore, Pete Haines, Graham McNeill, Andy Hoare, Phil Kelly, Anthony Reynolds, Steve Cumiskey, Adrian Wood, Dylan Owen, Matthew Ward, Che Webster, Photographis Studio, Joss Whedon for Firefly, Bender Bending Rodriguez, Vin Diesel, iTunes and Ill Niño. And as always, remember to "ph34r Our m4d 1337 h4x0r 5k!11z!!!"

## PRODUCTION

**Production:** Tero Kanko.

**UK Editor:** Paul Sawyer

**UK Production Team:** Andrew Stewart, Matthew Hutson, Paul Rudge, Christian Byrne, Greg MacGregor & Sean Turtle.

## ARTWORK

John Blanche, Alex Boyd, Paul Jeacock, David Gallagher, Nuala Kennedy, Paul Dainton, Neil Hodgson, Karl Kopinski & Stefan Kopinski.

## CITADEL DESIGN TEAM

Jes Goodwin, Brian Nelson, Juan Diaz, Aly Morrison, Alan Perry, Michael Perry, Trish Morrison, Mark Harrison, Alex Hedström, Colin Grayson, Dave Andrews, Tim Adcock, Gary Morley, Martin Footit, Adam Clark & Dave Thomas.

## 'EAVY METAL TEAM

Neil Green, Mark Jones, Keith Robertson, Kirsten Mickleburgh, Darren Latham, Seb Perbet & Kevin Asprey.

## HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

Webstore: [www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

Tel: (02) 9829 6111

Fax: (02) 9829 6161

Email: [direct\\_sales@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:direct_sales@games-workshop.com.au)

## GAMES WORKSHOP ON-LINE

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

## FORGE WORLD

[www.forgeworld.co.uk](http://www.forgeworld.co.uk)

## THE BLACK LIBRARY

[www.blacklibrary.co.uk](http://www.blacklibrary.co.uk)

**GAMES WORKSHOP**

PO Box 576, Ingleburn,  
NSW, 1890, Australia.

[white\\_dwarf@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:white_dwarf@games-workshop.com.au)

## ROGUE TRADER TOURNAMENTS

### ORKTOBERFEST

**Date:** 30-31 October

**Location:** Hendra, Brisbane

**Game Systems:** Warhammer, Warhammer 40,000, and Lord of the Rings

**Contact:** Ian Houlihan

**Email:** [info@ork-toberfest.org.au](mailto:info@ork-toberfest.org.au)

**Web:** [www.ork-toberfest.org.au](http://www.ork-toberfest.org.au)

Captain Lysander of the Imperial Fists.



## GAMING CLUB

To see your club in the pages of White Dwarf, send in details of your Club along with photos of any events you may have had, a recent club day, family days or anything you think the public would like to know about your Club.

If you are interested in this opportunity, send any information you have on your Club (including photos) to us here at the White Dwarf bunker. The one condition for us to consider your Club is that it must play Games Workshop Games.

**WHITE DWARF  
GAMING CLUBS  
P.O. BOX 576  
INGLEBURN NSW  
AUSTRALIA 1890**



## NEW WHITE DWARF PRICE

For the first time in over 8 years (the last price change was WD191) the cover price of White Dwarf will change. From Next issue White Dwarf 299 the price of your favourite Hobby magazine will be \$10.95 in Australia and \$12.95 in New Zealand. The price of subscriptions will remain at the current price in the short term so now is the best time to start a subscription or to extend your existing subscription.



**JUSTIN "BOO"  
KEYES**

**WORKING ON:**  
Dark Angels

**PLAYING WITH:**  
Black Templars

**LAST RESULT:**  
Loss



**TERO  
KANKO**

**WORKING ON:**  
still Stormtroopers

**PLAYING WITH:**  
Deathguard

**LAST RESULT:**  
Win

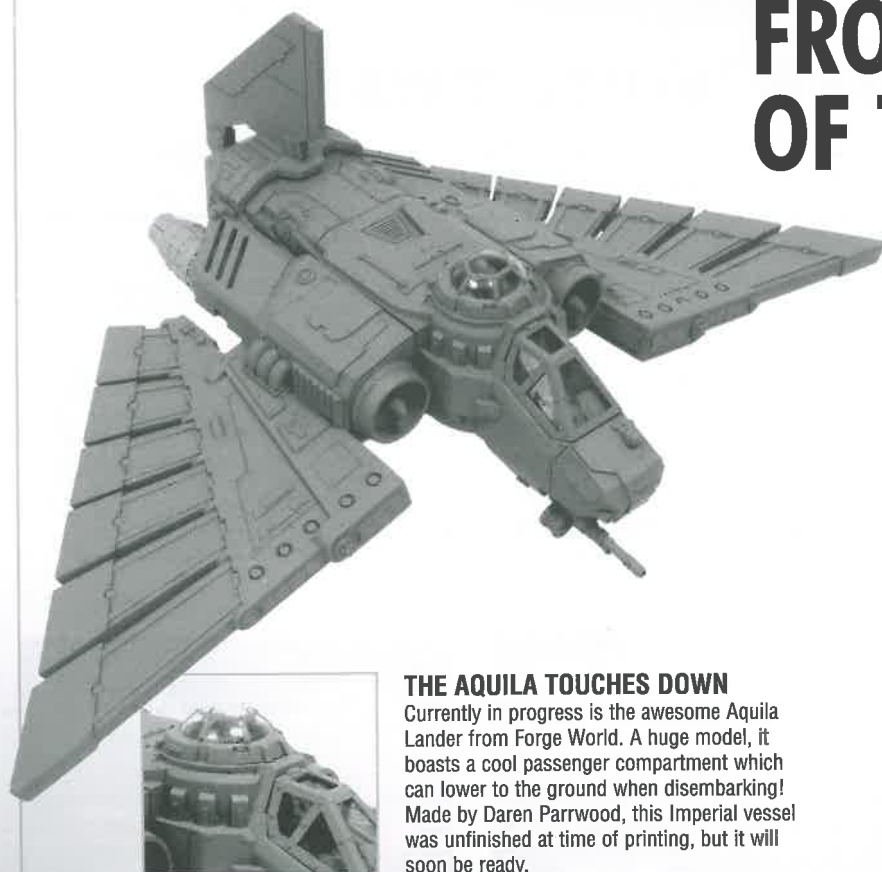


## WARHAMMER WORLD REVEALED

The full vastness of the Warhammer world has finally been revealed in the form of a gigantic map! Featuring all the well-known parts of the world it shows the sprawling territories of the Old World, Ulthuan and Lustria in greater detail than ever before. Even more interesting is that the map details a host of new and unexplored areas of the Warhammer world such as the mysterious Kingdoms of Ind, far Cathay, the Southlands and numerous uncharted islands. Some of the places revealed are the dreaded Warpstone Desert and Great Bastion. Never before seen, these new realms complete the picture of the Warhammer world.



## FROM THE HEAT OF THE FORGE



### THE AQUILA TOUCHES DOWN

Currently in progress is the awesome Aquila Lander from Forge World. A huge model, it boasts a cool passenger compartment which can lower to the ground when disembarking! Made by Daren Parrwood, this Imperial vessel was unfinished at time of printing, but it will soon be ready.

### CHARGE OF THE KNARLOCS

Tau armies and Kroot mercenaries get a boost with some cool new Knarloc riders released by Forge World. These menacing creatures were sculpted by Daniel Cockersell. Three different models will be available when the Knarloc riders are released.







## THE BATTLE FOR MACRAGGE

AUS\$85 NZ\$95

Immerse yourself in the grim darkness of the far future with the Battle For Macragge. Fight battles between the glorious Ultramarines and their most vicious foes, the Tyranids, as they clash on the Ultramarines homeland.

This boxed set contains:

- 10 plastic Space Marines
- 24 plastic Tyranids
- Crashed spaceship and objectives
- Battle For Macragge 32 page manual
- Dice, range rulers and templates
- Rules section 112 page manual

Models sculpted by Mark Harrison, Dave Andrews, Jes Goodwin, Jñan Diaz, Darren Parwood and Martin Footitt.

*These models require assembly.*



## BATTLE DICE AUS\$16 NZ\$18

This metal dice box contains 12 gaming dice.



## 40K BATTLE DICE AUS\$18 NZ\$20

This metal dice box contains 12 Warhammer 40,000 gaming dice.



Prices are subject to change without notice. Prices correct at time of going to print.



### CHAPEL OF SANCTUARY AUS\$95 NZ\$100

This boxed set contains one Chapel of Sanctuary, sculpted by Dean Andrews and is only available from the **HOBBY SERVICE**.  
*This model requires assembly.*





**SANCTUARY**  
**\$95 NZ\$10**  
 contains one Ch...  
 , sculpted by Da...  
 only available fr...  
**BBY SERVICE CENT**  
 s model requires assembly

## MENGIL'S MANFLAYERS

AUS\$55 NZ\$60

This boxed set contains Mengil Manhide, Standard Bearer, Musician and seven manflayers, sculpted by Chris Fitzpatrick. These models require assembly.



Prices are subject to change without notice. Prices correct at time of going to print.



# THE BATTLE FOR MACRAGGE

A WARHAMMER 40,000 BATTLE REPORT BY SEAN TURTLE, NATHAN WINTER AND ADAM TROKE

One of the great things about Battle For Macragge is that it is ideally suited for beginners to the Games Workshop hobby. One of the main goals of the team that wrote and developed Battle For Macragge was to make the rules easily accessible to a complete novice to the game. The new box set provided us with a great opportunity to showcase it being tried and tested by some real life 'beginners'. Adam Troke searched the Design and Production Studios and eventually found two willing volunteers who had never ventured into the grim darkness of Warhammer 40,000. All we asked of them was that they play a few games using Battle For Macragge, and see how they got on.

## AT ANY COST

*As the Ultramarines mustered their fleet in defence of Macragge, one ship passed through the warzone on business other than battle. The Dauntless class light cruiser, Benedictio, was inbound from the planet Belios IV, the site of a fierce conflict between the Tyranid menace and the Ultramarines 5th Company. She carried a consignment no less precious than the Space Marines that manned the strike cruisers and battle barges of the massed fleet – gene-seed, extracted from the Ultramarines who had met their end in battle.*

*Gene-seed, and its surgical implantation, is an essential step in the creation of a Space Marine, the final catalyst that activates and moderates their physiological and mental transformation. It is the genetic record of a Space Marine, a biological blueprint that is held in almost holy reverence. Every Space Marine has two progenoid glands that constantly replicate his genetic matter, and when a Space Marine falls in battle, his gene-seed is harvested by the Apothecaries so that it will ensure the creation of the next generation of Space Marines.*

*The Benedictio was carrying enough gene-seed to create many more Ultramarines, and in view of the desperate conflict ahead, its value to the Chapter in both physical and spiritual terms was immeasurable.*

*But on the voyage back the Benedictio had met with trouble, her escorts had been destroyed and massive battle scars marred her hull. A garbled vox transmission came from the stricken vessel – she had been boarded by a Tyranid vanguard force, and fighting was raging within the ship. Before any help could arrive, the Benedictio suffered a series of catastrophic explosions and broke up, its demise enshrining a fiery arc in the upper reaches of Macragge's atmosphere.*

*Even as the wreckage was raining down across hundreds of kilometres of northern tundra, Chapter Master Marneus Calgar ordered the Ultramarines 2nd Company into action. They were to search the area, rescue anyone still alive and terminate any Tyranids they found, but their primary objective was the retrieval of the gene-seed – the adamantium canister protecting it should have survived the impact and had to be found and secured at any cost. The future of the Chapter was at stake, and the warriors of 2nd Company meditated upon this as they completed last minute maintenance prayers and battle hymns en route to the crash site. What was to follow would be the opening skirmish of the Battle for Macragge, the fiercest conflict of the first Tyrannic war.*





## RETRIEVE THE GENE-SEED AT ALL COSTS



**Sean:** I began working at Games Workshop roughly two years ago as a layout designer on White Dwarf, moving to the Global White Dwarf Team last year. In all that time, I've never played a proper game of Warhammer

40,000. I flirted with the hobby in my younger years, but my imagination was squarely aimed at the world of fantasy, rather than its science fiction cousin, so it only seemed natural that I would play Warhammer instead. When I was re-aquainted with the hobby over a decade later, I simply thought I would be able to pick up where I had left off (however, much the same as my early foray into the world of Warhammer, I still haven't worked out how to use Wood Elves properly).

I've read the history of the various races throughout the Warhammer 40,000 universe, but the mechanics of the game system are something I have never had to contend with. I can tell you the difference between a Black Templar Space Marine and his Dark Angels

equivalent (from a thematic viewpoint, at least), but ask me to explain the finer points of the new Assault rules, and you may as well hang a 'vacant' sign around my neck. So my knowledge of the game is rudimentary to say the least. Being the butt of fellow 'Dwarfer' Matt Hutson's jokes has become a regular occurrence, and when it came out that the Battle For Macragge's battle report might require something other than the veterans of Games Development, my ineptitude was mentioned as a possibility. It transpired that I would be pitting my (in)substantial wits against another fellow novice, Nathan Winter. Being a colleague in the Production Studio, victory would offer a wealth of heckles for the boy from Book Production. Defeat would be unthinkable...

The practice games were eventful. Pride overtook rational thought and Nathan and I declared that we could move on from the first few missions and get our teeth into the meatier confrontations. It became obvious that we could just about move our models around the table, and little else, so we humbly returned to the beginning. I envisioned this battle report would be an evenly contested affair, with the cut and thrust of two keen

minds being replaced by a mutual parrying situation where, if you're lucky, your opponent's sword twangs back and he cuts off his own head. That is how I imagined it would go, at any rate. Something I began to appreciate was the tactical nuances involved in the game, even from these simple scenarios. It's not just a case of rolling the dice and moving blindly forward. There was more than one occasion when we had to start the mission again (and not just because I wasn't winning), as Nathan and I (very) slowly started realising how to play the game.

So to the day itself. Nathan and I arranged our practice games in a quiet place where we could marvel at each other's clumsy attempts away from the experts in the Studio, we announced that we could proceed straight to Scenario Four, as we had mastered the rules introduced in the previous three missions. I realise now I was a little foolhardy... for those of you out there who are new to the game, fear not, I guarantee you will realise, no matter how badly your first game might go, there is always someone worse off than you. For the veterans reading this, sniggering at my incompetence, I promise you, you won't be disappointed...

## CONSUME EVERY LIVING THING



**Nathan:** "Battle For Mac' what?". When I was asked to take part in a Warhammer 40,000 battle report for White Dwarf I assumed they had got the wrong person; the game has always been a mystery to me!

Despite having produced a number of codexes whilst working for the Book Production department at Games Workshop, my only experience of gaming was hearing the raucous cries of my fellow employees from the other end of the Studio as they huddled around a 6' x 4' piece of green board and cackled mercilessly at each other.

I have had experience of painting miniatures in my youth, and occasionally myself and a friend would pit our models against each other in a paint-chipping frenzy that resembled a game of table soccer more than anything else. But that was a long time ago, and I had a feeling I wouldn't get away with those tactics this time.

The news that this was going to be a starter game for novices came as a blessed relief for me, and I began to understand why I was at the top of the list of contenders. When I saw that Sean was going to be my opponent, I truly understood the enormity of my

colleagues' faith in my ineptitude; Sean was equally as inexperienced as me and had already built up a reputation of being an unlucky player with the few games of Warhammer he had played. Truly we were a match made in hell.

One of the reasons why I had never previously attempted to play Warhammer 40,000 was because there was a massive gulf between my own knowledge and the majority of opponents here at Games Workshop, it would have been just plain embarrassing. At least I knew this wasn't going to be a problem with Sean and the fact that he was from another department and was also pretty competitive was going to make it all the more fun if I beat him! All I had to do was not play as badly as him, and I couldn't lose! And I've even got time to practice my cackle!

After a look at the scenarios, I realised that this was going to be a great opportunity for me to learn something about Space Marines and Tyranids, and as I would be working on the new codexes for both these races in the coming months, it couldn't have been planned better. I knew almost immediately that Tyranids were the army for me, there was something about their alien look and unorthodox weapons that captured my imagination (or maybe it was the fact that I massively outnumbered the Space Marines!); it was going to be so much fun watching those little blue men run!





# MISSION ONE

## THE INCESSANT XENO TIDE

**“By the Throne, these hellspawn are fast!”, yelled Brother Arrain, his bolter spitting death and blowing an advancing Genestealer apart in a spray of chitin and blood. “They are without end!”**

*Octavian glanced towards Varras, now laden with the inert fusion core, and again across the battlefield to the approaching hordes. Against such odds, there was only one course of action – a fighting withdrawal towards clearer ground. They would fall back, shielding Varras and raining fire and fury down upon the Xenos. They were the Emperor’s finest and they knew no fear.*

**“Squad Octavian, fall back now. Kill the aliens! Kill them all!”**

### MISSION OVERVIEW

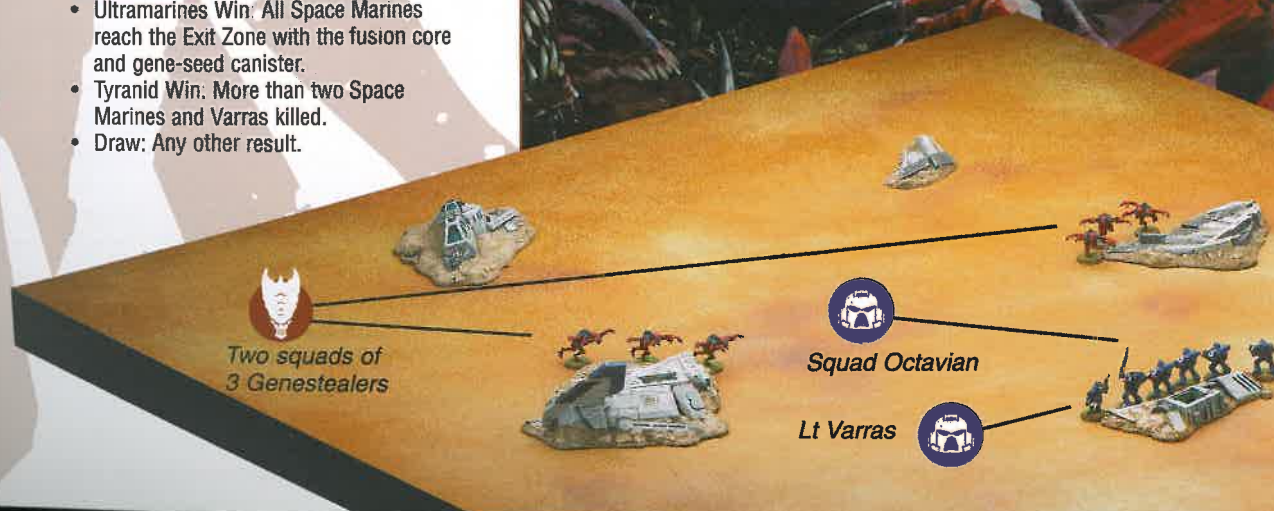
This mission is the fourth of the scenarios contained with Battle For Macragge. By this point Sean and Nathan had already played through the first three and were more than ready for what this deadly mission would bring. Previously Lieutenant Varras had fought to rescue a canister of precious gene-seed from the crashed lander, and in the last scenario disarmed the dangerously overloading fusion core while the Ultramarines warriors had stalwartly defended him. Now, with both the fusion core, and the gene-seed canister in their possession Squad Octavian and Lieutenant Varras must fall back to the rendezvous point.

### SET-UP

Squad Octavian and Varras are placed touching the wreckage containing the Fusion Core. The opposite table edge is the Exit Zone, 36" from the Space Marines. Place two units of three Genestealers next to two other pieces of wreckage. The Tyranid player goes first.

### OBJECTIVES

- Ultramarines Win: All Space Marines reach the Exit Zone with the fusion core and gene-seed canister.
- Tyranid Win: More than two Space Marines and Varras killed.
- Draw: Any other result.







*Squad Octavian struggle to quell the Tyranid forces*

### TYRANIDS TURN 1

**Nathan:** The first scenario seemed simple enough, my sole aim was to stop Varras and his fellow Ultramarines getting to the exit zone at all costs. With this in mind I had deployed my Genestealers as close to the enemy as possible, and readied them for a suicidal charge into combat. They would hopefully tie up Sean's bid for freedom and hopefully take a few of his men with them. I moved my first unit of Genestealers the full 6" allowed in a straight line towards the Ultramarines and then rolled for movement across difficult terrain with my second unit, the highest dice was a 4 which took them across the terrain. They suddenly looked very vulnerable to those pesky bolters.

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 1

**Sean:** My aim in this mission was to cross the board to the other side with Lieutenant Varras under the protection of Squad Octavian. With six Genestealers preparing to thwart my advance, I was confident that my flamer would be able to deal with the aliens without any real problems. The turn began brightly enough. I rolled 8" for my movement and headed straight for the nearest Genestealer unit, already itching to bathe the loathsome creatures in flames and see them writhe in agony (and thus inflict a similar fate on Nathan). However, I was nowhere near close enough, and instead had to rely on the rest of the unit's bolters to take down the enemy. From my nine shots of Rapid Fire I managed to score 6 hits, and prepared to give Nathan a wide grin as I rolled the dice to ensure I had destroyed the entire unit, but my smile dropped to the floor – I realised I had only managed to kill two, leaving one lone Genestealer obstructing my path...

### TYRANIDS TURN 2

**Nathan:** I was happy to see Sean's men head towards my slaving beasts, as it meant if I survived his bolters I would be able to charge into him with at least one unit next turn.

Fortunately, Sean's poor rolling left an entire unit and one lone Genestealer alive and eager to avenge their fellow aliens' deaths. I moved all of my remaining Genestealers 6" towards the Ultramarines – within assault range... This was going to be nasty! The lone Genestealer assaulted with one aim, to bury his teeth in the bald head of Lieutenant Varras. I rolled three dice and was overjoyed to get a 6 – due to the Genestealer's Rending Claws, this meant instant death for the follically challenged one. My first success! I had a taste for blood now and charged my other unit into the Ultramarines' flank. Unfortunately one of my Genestealers fell short but at least I had a combined total of six attacks from the two that reached. In the ensuing blur of tooth and claw another Ultramarine fell and I gave a (not very) muffled cry of joy!

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 2

**Sean:** My failure to kill the first unit of Genestealers outright meant I had still had no clear route to win the game, and with Nathan closing in on either side, it meant I would be certain to face an assault charge in this turn,

### FALLING BACK

The Ultramarines player is falling back, giving them a rapid, fighting retreat. Each turn the squad (including Varras) move 2D6" in a direction chosen by the Ultramarines player, remaining within 2" of each other. They will even break off from combat with the Genestealers in order to continue falling back.

no matter which unit I turned my weapons on. However, I noticed that a 4" move in a certain direction would enable me to envelop both units of Genestealers in my righteous flames; a chance to make up for the feeble shooting from the last turn! And so it proved to be as four of the xenos fell to the righteous flame of the Imperium. Things were suddenly looking up for Squad Octavian, even though they had lost their charge.

### TYRANIDS TURN 3

**Nathan:** Ouch! I expected to take one or two casualties but that flamer came as a nasty surprise. At least I could console myself with the knowledge that I still had one Genestealer remaining and he was easily within assaulting range. He threw himself into combat and from his three attacks one was a 6, taking the last Space Marine I needed to kill out of the game. Victory was mine!

### RAPID FIRE

Rapid fire weapons are powerful firearms with a high rate of fire, capable of spewing out a hail of death into the enemy. A model with a rapid fire weapon can always make two shots at an enemy within 12". If the firers remain stationary, they can choose to shoot just once up to their maximum range instead.



*Sean and Nathan feverishly compare lack of gaming experience*



# MISSION TWO

## REINFORCEMENTS

*The distinctive roar of bolter fire and the shrill screeches of dying Tyranids told Brother Atreus that his reinforcements were not too late to aid his brother Space Marines.*

*"Brother-Sergeant Octavian, this is Squad Atreus. Hold your position, we are moving to assist."*

*Atreus climbed the ridge and gazed down upon the battle below, seeing teeming hordes of Termagants swarming around a pulsing hive node that was partially obscured behind smouldering wreckage. He knew that these creatures had to be purged before they could rendezvous with Squad Octavian, and he gave the order to advance. All would perish.*

### MISSION OVERVIEW

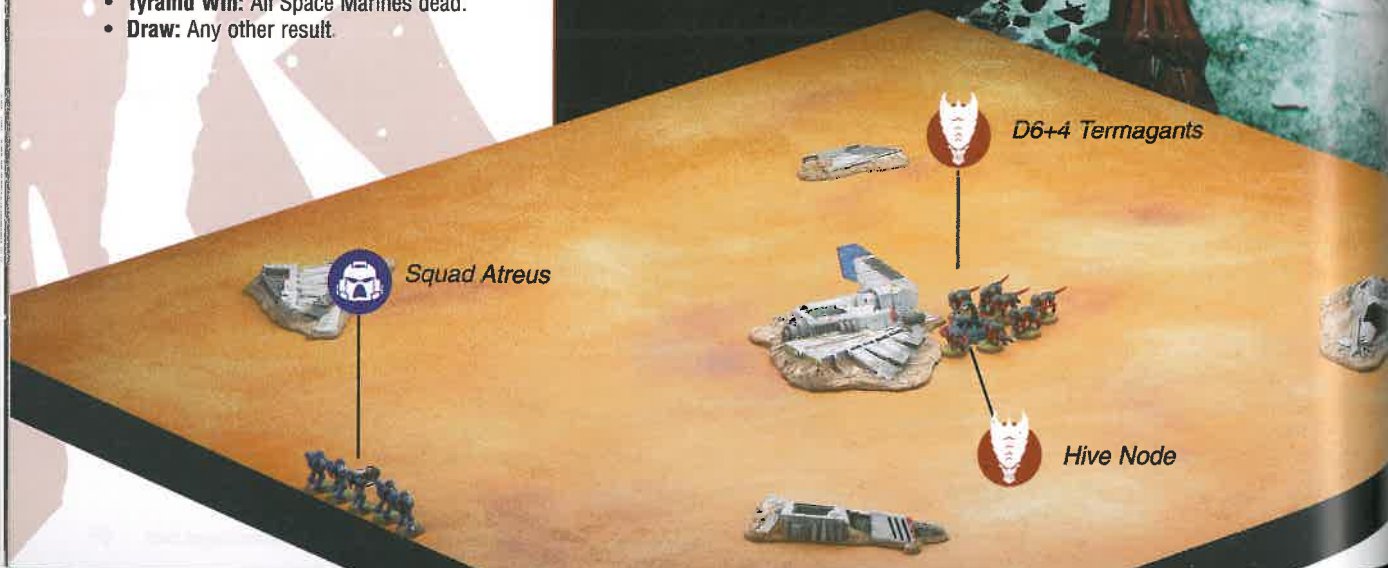
Squad Atreus marches across the arid wastes to reinforce Squad Octavian. However, their way is not clear, with increasing Tyranid activity in the area, Squad Atreus must press onward through the growing infestation to achieve their rendezvous with Squad Octavian.

### SET-UP

Deploy Squad Atreus – four Space Marines with bolters and one with a missile launcher – on one table edge. Put a large piece of wreckage 18" away from the Space Marines, with the Tyranid Hive Node directly behind it. Place another two pieces of wreckage more than 6" away from the Hive Node, and four to ten Termagants (four plus an extra D6 worth of Termagants) touching the Node. The Ultramarines player goes first.

### OBJECTIVES

- **Ultramarines Win:** Squad Atreus reach the rendezvous point.
- **Tyranid Win:** All Space Marines dead.
- **Draw:** Any other result.







The squad prepare to mount their attack on the Hive Node, as it spews out more Termagants

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 1

**Sean:** After such a feeble effort in the opening mission, I was hoping for a little more luck in the next scenario. Armed with a meaty missile launcher, I planned to concentrate on reducing the Hive Node's production line first, and then try to thin the ranks of the oncoming Termagants as I made my way across the board. Opting to use the missile launcher meant that the squad could not move in that turn, so from the back of the board I launched my first krak missile at the **Hive Node**, with four bolter shots thrown in for good measure. Good measure indeed, but with little effect. None of the Space Marines' bolter shots managed to penetrate the Hive Node, as I needed to roll a 6 to inflict any sort of damage. Luckily, the missile launcher had scored a wound, meaning that if I could repeat the trick in the next turn, Nathan's numbers would not be so quick to return to the board.

## TYRANIDS TURN 1

**Nathan:** In his turn Sean had given my Hive Node a pounding thanks to that missile launcher. The Hive Node increases my chances of winning the mission all the time it is alive, so what I needed to do was give Sean something more immediate to think about. I started by moving my Termagants towards Squad Atreus, having them scamper across the wreckage to make the most direct line towards the Ultramarines. Termagants get to roll 3D6 and pick the highest when moving over **Difficult Terrain** and I rolled a 5, 1, 1 to see how far they went this turn. Looking at the distance between my Termagants and Squad Atreus I knew I couldn't hit them with the Termagants' fleshborers. They only have a range of 12" and, bearing in mind the Termagants started play 18" away from the Space Marines, I knew shooting would be a waste of time. Instead I chose to use the Termagants' special rule; **Fleet of Claw**.

I rolled a D6, and scored a 3, allowing me to move my brood of chittering Termagants 3" closer to Sean's warriors. Lastly, three more Termagants crawled out of the oozing maw of the Hive Node, preparing to form a new brood.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 2

**Sean:** My powers of repetition proved invaluable, as again I managed to hit the Hive Node with everything I had, only for the missile launcher to be the sole weapon to inflict a wound. Not that it mattered, the maximum number of wounds I could mete out on the Node was two, but it would have been good for morale to pepper the alien orifice with some more shooting. Meanwhile, the Termagants were advancing ever closer, and with the Hive Node now damaged, the time had come to forgo retribution and head for the other side of the board...

## TYRANIDS TURN 2

**Nathan:** Curses! With the Hive Node damaged the ability of the Termagants to re-enter play was severely hampered. I would have to do something to put Sean and his Ultramarines under pressure. I moved my Termagant Brood forward 6", putting the Ultramarines comfortably in the range of my fleshborers. In the Shooting phase all three of the fleshborers hit, and wounded. I was keen to see some of the Space Marines go down to the wicked fleshborer beetles, but Sean passed all three saves with a smug grin. There was no way I could assault Sean's Ultramarines since I was out of range. Things were starting to look a little precarious, with my Termagants so close to his Ultramarines, next turn could bring trouble. With all ten Termagants already on the board, I couldn't bring any more out through the Hive Node so without further ado I handed over my turn to Sean.

## HIVE NODE

The Node is a living entrance to an organism busily creating more Tyranids. It is incredibly tough; it takes four wounds to disable the Node. When the Hive Node takes two of its four wounds, it is damaged, and will be less effective at creating replacement warriors. Tyranids are returned touching the Hive Node where possible, but must always be more than 1" away from enemy models.

## DIFFICULT TERRAIN

The battlefield is not exclusively made up of firm, stable, open ground. Shell craters, ruined vehicles, buildings and wooded areas can make the going tough for troops as they move about. In Warhammer 40,000 these areas are called difficult ground. Normal infantry models roll 2D6 and treats the highest score as their maximum move in inches this turn. Some models, like Termagants are better equipped to move through areas such as this, and gain a bonus.

## FLEET OF CLAW

Certain models in Warhammer 40,000 have special abilities that can affect their movement in different ways. Termagants, for example, can use a move called Fleet of Claw. Instead of firing their weapons in the Shooting phase, they may move an extra D6", representing them powering forward as fast as they can.





*The Termagants spew forth from the Hive Node towards the Space Marines*

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 3

**Sean:** With Nathan's minions heading for me with frightening speed, I set off on my journey, trying to stay out of their annoying move-fleet of foot-assault range, praying that my Space Marines would be a little more assertive with their bolter fire. For once, I wasn't to be disappointed. From a maximum of eight shots (the missile launcher seemed to have become nothing more than an expensive (and heavy) ornament now that I was on the move), I managed to mow down six of the xenos, which made the inevitable assault a lot more palatable.

### TYRANIDS TURN 3

**Nathan:** Bolters are dangerous! Six dead Termagants in one salvo, didn't leave me in a very strong position. Even worse, I didn't have enough Termagants around the Hive Node to create a new unit. The last remaining Termagant near the Ultramarines scuttled a little closer, firing his fleshborer, but missed. Then, with a piercing shriek it propelled itself into assault. Amazingly it hit twice, and even managed to inflict a wound. With a look of disbelief one of the Space Marines failed his Armour Save and died, but not before he lashed out at the Tyranid, killing it in return. I was quite pleased with that, considering expendable Termagants are compared to Space Marines. Finally I placed two more Termagant models beside the Hive Node, meaning they could move off as a new brood next turn.

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 4

**Sean:** With the Marine carrying the missile launcher sacrificed to the Termagants' assault as a useless luxury, it removed any temptation to stand and fire off a few frag missiles. My aim was now simple; to get across the board as fast as possible, and hope to keep as much distance between myself and the Termagants as I could. With the xenos having to be redeployed, I had no target within my 12" radius (I had, after all moved, and so gave up any chance to fire 24"), ultimately my turn consisted of a 6" move (marginally) closer to safety.





## TYRANIDS TURN 4

**Nathan:** With Sean approaching the exit area I knew my tactic had to involve slowing him down and inflicting as many casualties as possible. With the Hive Node damaged this would be extra difficult, but I could do it, if I was lucky. I decided to move across the wreckage again, hoping for a good movement roll, and I wasn't disappointed, rolling a 6, 6 and a 1. Judging the distance from the Termagants to the Ultramarines I reasoned at least some of my fleshborers would be in range. Three were and, in a shower of slimy, living ammunition, the Termagants opened fire, but none found their mark. I was well out of range for an assault, so I placed two more Termagants by the Hive Node and turned play over to Sean.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 5

**Sean:** With the Termagants exiting from the Hive Node with frightening regularity, I could literally see wave after wave scampering towards me as I made my way across the board, in a wobbly arc pattern. It was merely a case of shooting them down as and when they came close enough, and hoping that I wouldn't be caught up in a prolonged combat that would allow the later units to join in the fray and bog me down. Alas, this is precisely what happened. I managed to take out three of the aliens with my shooting, but that was only half their number. Time was running out – there was already another unit on the way...

## TYRANIDS TURN 5

**Nathan:** Victory was beginning to look a real possibility, especially if I could keep the Space Marines bogged down in combat for a few turns. I moved the three Termagants closer to the Space Marines, within assault range, and fired the fleshborers again. This time I managed two hits, and one wound. However this was easily saved. With the Termagants close enough to assault I charged them in, scoring four hits, and one wound. Sean failed the Saving throw this time, and a Space Marine was pulled to the floor.

In return the Space Marines scored two hits, both of these wounded, and I failed both saves. This left only one Termagant in combat with him, who would almost certainly die next turn. On the plus side, the Space Marines weren't going to be able to move closer to the objective this turn. Two more Termagants emerged from the Hive Node, giving me a new brood to use next turn.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 6

**Sean:** I managed to kill the three Termagants, but I was still struggling to get anywhere near the objective. Every time I managed to cut down a unit of Tyranids, it was only a matter of time before they were replaced by the Hive Node (praise the Emperor that it was no longer operating at full strength! My chances would have become even slimmer – if that were at all possible).



*The Tyranids begin their merciless assault, intent on clawing the Space Marines to pieces*



## TYRANIDS TURN 6

**Nathan:** The Space Marines made short work of my last Termagant in combat, so I pushed forward with the remaining brood, eager to scupper their plans once again. Moving across the wreckage I rolled 6, 5 and 3, putting me well in range of the Space Marines with my fleshborers. I could choose now either to try a Fleet of Claw and get close enough for an assault, or stand back and let rip with my fleshborers. Knowing that my 'Gaunts would count as in **Cover** I opted for the safe choice and opened fire. The Termagants scored three hits, and two wounds. With a look of horror one of the Saving throws came up as a 2, and another Ultramarine toppled to the floor. Now I was glad I had chosen to fire instead! Another pair of Termagants emerged from the Hive Node signalling the end of my turn.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 7

**Sean:** I was amazed that Nathan had opted to hang back from combat, he had instead chosen to seek protection from my bolter fire in the cover that the fallen craft offered. It was to my dismay that I realised he was only dragging out the inevitable – yet another unit of Termagants was preparing to exit from the Hive Node, meaning that he had one unit able to fire at me from relative safety, while a second moved to cut off my exit. Just when I thought it was looking good, my shooting compounded my misery. With only two Space

Marines left to rush for the table edge, their four shots resulted in a solitary hit, which predictably failed to wound. I wonder what Tyranid sniggering sounds like?

## TYRANIDS TURN 7

**Nathan:** Sean was running scared now, desperately limping his last two Space Marines towards the exit area. I decided now would be a good time to give chase and rolled my dice for difficult terrain. The result was a 5, 2 and 3. With this score I wasn't certain I'd be able to reach Sean's Space Marines, even if I used a Fleet of Claw instead of shooting. In the end (and to my lasting regret) I decided to fire my fleshborers instead. Only two were in range, and whilst they both hit, they failed to wound. Sean was still a long way from home, but he was getting closer every turn. Two more Termagants popping into play signified the end of my turn.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 8

**Sean:** I trudged on with disconsolation as, despite my Space Marines improving their aim and causing two wounds on the Termagants rushing to cut me off (I figured that Nathan had decided to hang back with the unit ensconced on the rubble and so I deemed them the lesser of two evils), their efforts were nullified with Nathan pulling two Cover Saves out of the bag (a trend that was becoming more and more frustrating).

## COVER SAVES

When hot lead is flying nobody wants to be stood in the open! All good tacticians know the benefits of cover, it can conceal you from sight, or deflect away the worst of the fire your enemy sends your way. This is represented by Cover Saves. Models touching scenery that allows a Cover Save may choose to use the Cover Save the scenery provides instead of the Armour Save, if it benefits them to do so.

## TYRANIDS TURN 8

**Nathan:** I really love Cover Saves. The four Termagants closest to the Ultramarines were in a perfect position to fire on them, and the cover was protecting them nicely, so I left them where they were, moving my new brood across the wreckage as fast as I could. In the Shooting phase, I fired with the first squad of Termagants, only hitting once, and that was saved by the cursed power armour.

The other Termagant brood was too far out, so I used a Fleet of Claw to get them in a better position, rolling a healthy looking 5. Two more Termagants entered via the Hive Node (something Sean was really starting to hate!) and my turn was over.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 9

**Sean:** How wrong I was. With both units rushing towards me and with the odds stacked heavily in Nathan's favour, it seemed that I was about to suffer a second defeat. I managed to take down two of the Termagants closest to my objective, but with both units now in position to assault as well, things didn't exactly look peachy. I was fortunate in that one of the xenos managed to inflict a wound on my forlorn hopefuls, but with the two I felled in reply about to be replaced at the Hive Node (and thus release another unit to come after me), I was beginning to think this wouldn't be my day.

## TYRANIDS TURN 9

**Nathan:** It was now or never really, time to bring Sean's Space Marines down. Both units of Termagants moved closer to the Ultramarines, firing as they did so.

I managed to score four hits between both broods, and three wounds all together. How frustrating when the power armoured warriors shrugged off the hits once again! Why couldn't they just lie down and die? I launched my assault, with six Termagants total. With all the attacks they were rolling was hoping to bring the Space Marines down, but when I only managed a two hits, and one of these became a wound, which was shrugged off, my hopes sank a little.

The Imperium's finest were living up to their name. In return they battered down two of my Termagants, readying themselves for more. The Hive Node produced two more Termagants, and my turn was over.



*With victory in sight, the Squad face one last assault from the Termagants*



ing nobody wants to  
All good tactics  
cover, it can concea  
reflect away the work  
y sends your way  
y Cover Saves.  
nery that allows a  
ose to use the Cover  
vides instead of the  
enefits them to do

over Saves. The four  
the Ultramarines were  
fire on them, and the  
them nicely, so I left  
moving my new brood  
as fast as I could. In  
with the first squad  
g once, and that was  
wer armour.  
nt brood was too late  
Claw to get them  
a healthy looking  
entered via the Hive  
was really starting  
over.

## RN 9

. With both units  
l with the odds stack  
ur, it seemed that I  
l defeat. I managed  
rmagants closest to  
oth units now in  
ell, things didn't  
as fortunate in that  
ed to inflict a wound  
but with the two  
e replaced at the  
another unit to com  
ing to think this

ever really, time  
nes down. Both unit  
oser to the  
ey did so.  
four hits between  
ounds all together  
e power armoured  
e hits once again  
e down and die! S  
h six Termagants  
they were rolling  
Space Marines down  
l a two hits, and  
ound, which was  
sank a little.  
t were living up to  
battered down  
adying themselves  
produced two  
y turn was over.



*The last Ultramarine reaches the waypoint, and safety*

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 10

**Sean:** Amazingly my two Space Marines still stood. With two more Termagants struck down, I was trying not to admit to myself that I still had a faint chance of victory. It seemed that I was about to have defeat confirmed as Nathan scored a wound on one of my plucky men, but I managed to fend off his death in the form of yet another Armour Save. There was hope yet of Squad Atreus completing their mission.

## TYRANIDS TURN 10

**Nathan:** Those Space Marines were unstoppable, killing my Termagants with ease. My best chance was to get my new brood into the game, so I moved them across the rock, rolling poorly for the difficult terrain.

In the Shooting phase I had them Fleet of Claw, and they managed 4", bringing them still closer to the fight that raged on with the Space Marines and my remaining Termagants. In the Combat phase my dice were better than average against the Space Marines, but even then it was not enough.

The only hit that managed to wound easily shrugged off by Sean's Armour Save. In return he killed two more Termagants – he was starting to look like he thought he might win. However my new brood approaching the combat would put paid to that! Of course, two new Termagants entered play beside the Hive Node.

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 11

**Sean:** I had to admit to myself that I could snatch victory here if Lady Luck bothered to look at me with anything other than contempt. I managed to strike down the last Termagant (despite it making one of its Armour Saves, I had managed to inflict two wounds and thus

he was beaten) and suddenly the goal seemed possible. I managed to fend off the Termagant's dying attack as well thanks to an Armour Save of my own, and things were looking decidedly rosy.

## TYRANIDS TURN 11

**Nathan:** The brood that had scabbled across the wreckage moved closer to the remaining Ultramarines, and clearly looked in charge range. Knowing that an assault was possible I fired the fleshborers, hitting three times, and managing one wound. Sean looked worried as he rolled the dice for an Armour

Save, and horrified when it failed. He removed the model closest to my brood. It was then that I saw my mistake. Because he had taken the model closest to my brood, he had put my charge out of range. My own cunning had foiled me, by less than an inch! Is this what they call a tactic?

## ULTRAMARINES TURN 12

**Sean:** After such a prolonged fight, I couldn't believe I had one, solitary Space Marine left to scabble his way into the destination area, and accomplish the mission! Hurrah!





# MISSION THREE PURGE THE XENOS



*Furious bursts of bolter fire ripped across the wreckage-strewn landscape as Squad Octavian fought desperately to halt the endless tide of Genestealers swarming from every direction. A vox message, almost drowned by the gunfire and shrill cries of dying xenos, crackled across the vox-net.*

*"Brother Atreus, this is Sergeant Octavian. Your assistance is timely indeed. Converging on your position now."*

*"Sergeant, we have encountered an additional threat," responded Atreus.*

*"There is a Hive Node nearby, an abominable orifice spewing forth more of the xenos, spitting them from the earth like some foul infestation. We have damaged it, but not yet managed to destroy it."*

*The Sergeant peered across wreckage and picked out the Hive Node beyond, a writhing, fanged maw that disgorged more Termagants and Genestealers, each immediately scuttling to join the battle. Atreus was correct – before clearing the area this threat had to be wiped out.*

*"Atreus, maintain supporting fire. We have an opportunity to destroy this abomination and must take it. We will make good use of the fusion core Varras carries with him, and purge this xenos infestation once and for all. By the Emperor, these beasts shall rue the day they sought to despoil Macragge!"*

## MISSION OVERVIEW

The final Mission in Battle for Macragge sees Squads Octavian and Atreus make a desperate bid to evacuate the area with the gene-seed. However, they cannot abandon their duty, leaving such a prolific Tyranid presence and so, with Lieutenant Varras they hatch a daring plan to destroy the source of the infestation, the Hive Node, with the fusion core, before reaching the extraction point.

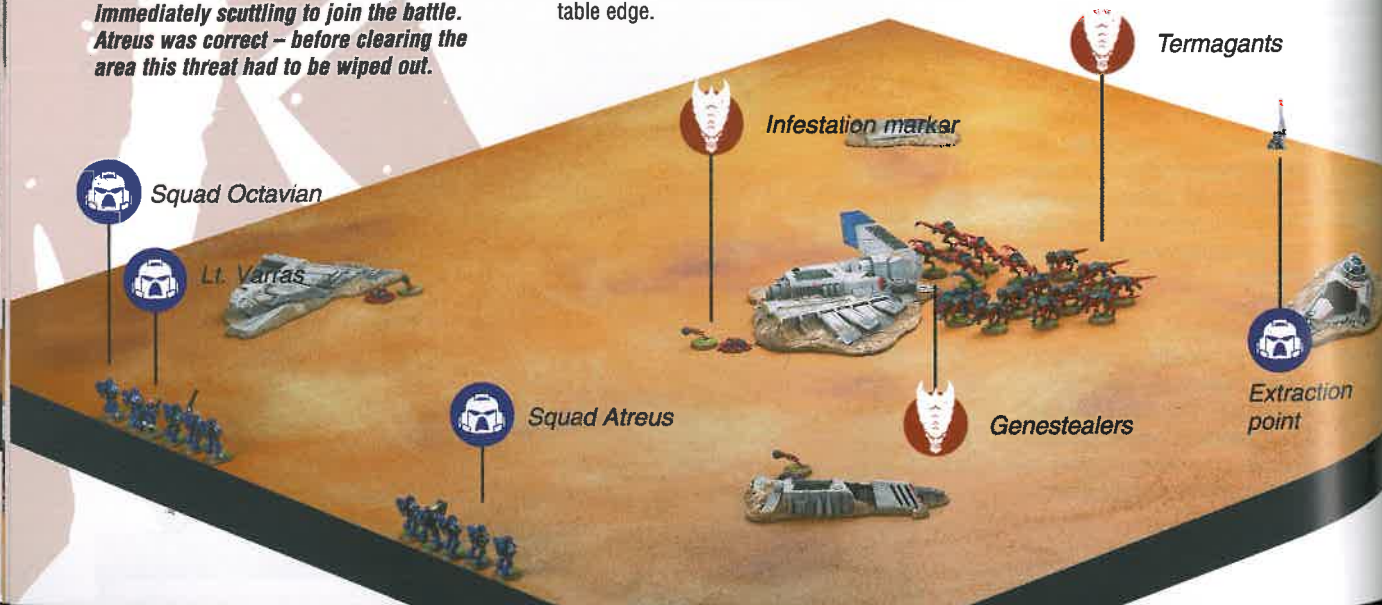
## SET-UP

Terrain arranged as in Mission Two. Squad Atreus and Squad Octavian are placed on one table edge, 12" apart. The locator beacon is put in the centre of the opposite table edge.

Node is placed as in Mission 5, with one of six Genestealers and one unit of ten Termagants touching it. The Tyranid player places three Infestation markers touching a wreckage, no closer than 12" from the Space Marines. One spore mine, of any type, is placed by each marker. The Ultramarines player goes first and must escape the board by the end of his twelfth turn.

## OBJECTIVES

- **Ultramarines Win: Major** – Hive Node destroyed, all Space Marines escape with the gene-seed.
- **Ultramarines Win: Minor** – Hive Node destroyed, at least five Space Marines escape with the gene-seed.
- **Tyranid Win: Major** – Hive Node intact, Space Marines dead.
- **Tyranid Win: Minor** – Hive Node intact, more than two Space Marines dead.
- **Draw:** Any other result.





**ULTRAMARINES TURN 1**  
 Sean: Up until now, the missions had seemed fairly even (in terms of model numbers, at least). The final mission, however, had Nathan employing over twice my number and, to add insult to injury, my first objective was to march right into the middle of their ranks to try and destroy the Hive Node! I decided against using the rocket launcher in the first turn, simply because I couldn't see the Hive Node, and I didn't want to hang around at the back of the board when I had to ensure some of the Space Marines made it to the opposite side of the board.

My shooting for the first turn was concentrated on the Infestation markers I had to contend with. Rather than trying to take out the spore mines already moving around the board, I wanted to try and prevent any more spewing forth from the ground. The squad containing the flamer seemed to have done the job, scoring two wounds on the marker to their left, but with Nathan managing to roll one save, it meant that I would face at least two more spores in the next turn.

The other squad fared better, with five hits and two wounds scored. Nathan couldn't repeat the Saving throw, and I had managed to take out one of the infernal markers. Ideally, I would have preferred to clear a path, now I would have to worry about the random movement of five or six mines as I traversed the battlefield to reach my target.

**Nathan:** So it was one-all going into the final mission; time to get back my winning ways. I had been particularly looking forward to this

mission, I had the advantage of outnumbering Sean and the fact that my troops would regenerate from the Hive Node seemed to suit my already successful "death or glory" approach. My tactics were simple, pile all of my 'Nids into combat as quickly as I could and make it as awkward as possible for the Space Marines to reach the exit zone. All bar one of my spore mines moved in the wrong direction, but at least the one successful spore moved 6" directly into the Space Marines' path.

I knew my Genestealers wouldn't be able to get into an assault range this turn so anticipating a barrage of bolter fire, I cunningly moved them 6" onto the wreckage in front of them so at least they would get a Cover Save when the firing began. My Termagants moved 6" and then with Fleet of Claw another four. Hopefully they had enough numbers to survive the gunfire and assault next turn!

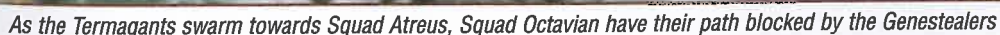
**Sean:** It appeared that Nathan's main tactic was to rush straight at me, concentrating on the unit containing the rocket launcher; not too bad an idea as it meant I could (if lucky) use the second unit to try and circle around to the Hive Node. However, there was still the small matter of the unit of Genestealers sitting on top of the shuttle wreckage to worry about.

I focused all the shooting from Squad Atrous at the Termagants heading straight for me. From six hits I managed to kill five, but until I could do something about the Hive Node, it wouldn't be long before their numbers were replaced...

**Nathan:** Well, my plan was working so far, despite taking a casualty the Genestealers still looked menacing on the wreckage and there were enough Termagants still alive to charge into combat this turn. But first I moved my spore mines, mostly in the wrong direction, though at least one drifted closer to Squad Atreus. I decided to use the same tactics again and left the Genestealers on the wreckage to take advantage of the Cover Save.

Then came the fun part, my Termagants moved 6" and fired their weapons (which all bounced off the Space Marines' armour), then they readied themselves and sprang at their cowardly foe. In the resulting battle only one Space Marine fell but I had fulfilled my first objective of bogging down the Space Marines in combat. All that was left for me to do this turn was replace my fallen Tyranids and I happily positioned six Termagants and one Genestealer next to the Hive Node... the reinforcements had arrived!

**Sean:** Robert Burns may have had a point. My best laid plan really was disintegrating rapidly. I still hadn't managed to lay a single rocket on the Hive Node, and with Squad Atreus now tied up in combat with the pesky Termagants, that wasn't going to change any time soon. My sneak around the outside for Squad Octavian was about as subtle as a sledgehammer; the Genestealers were already baying for my blood, and I sensed they would soon be scampering over the wreckage to begin the disassembly of my unit. I managed to take two of them down with my flamer, but







*The Genestealers swarm over Squad Octavian*

previous experience suggested that you should try to keep Genestealers at arm's length – something I had just failed to do.

Though bogged down, I was still confident of Squad Atreus being able to dispose of the remaining Termagants and continue their laboured efforts to slow down the number of Tyranids exiting from the Hive Node. How wrong I was. An absolutely abysmal round of rolling to wound in combat meant that I failed to cause a stitch of harm to the enemy, and when Nathan replied with the death of one of my own Space Marines, I felt like crying there and then.

### TYRANIDS TURN 3

**Nathan:** Wiping the tears of laughter from my eyes, I piled my assaulting Genestealers into Squad Octavian. I remembered the power of a Genestealer charge from the first mission with relish and I wasn't disappointed this time either, with five hits and one of them a 6 (no Armour Save) two of the Space Marines were scythed down.

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 4

**Sean:** My units were now completely isolated from each other – the one thing I had hoped to avoid, and it didn't take an astropath (told you I knew something about the game) to realise that my Space Marines wouldn't last too long in the face of a unit of Genestealers soon to be backed up by – another unit of Genestealers. Hurrah!

With both units in combat, there was no chance of any shooting this turn, so it was straight into combat. Squad Atreus finally managed to rid themselves of the remaining Termagants, and wearily looked towards their target, now surrounded by nine more Termagants and two Genestealers.

Squad Octavian were holding their own against the Genestealers. There were now only

two stood before them, but I wasn't naïve enough to think that any I managed to fell would not be recycled from the Hive Node to head straight for me, as three already were. It was at this point that Lieutenant Varras was torn to pieces (quite literally) along with another Marine, by the Genestealers, and I have to admit, at this point I was really struggling to see any way out of the game – except of course for total annihilation. I managed to kill another of the infernal beings, but failing to dispose of both of them meant I was again unable to move in my next turn. It was as if I was inviting the other Genestealers to join the party...

### TYRANIDS TURN 4

**Nathan:** This scenario was definitely going my way. It was already turn four and Sean's troops had hardly progressed a third of the way across the board. With this in mind I decided to change tactics slightly and moved all of my fresh Tyranids onto the wreckage. Sean was going to have to come towards the Hive Node if he wanted to destroy it and get to the exit zone and when he did my 'Nids would be ready to charge!

I then moved my spore mines in the wrong direction yet again, they were slowly drifting away from the action and unfortunately I couldn't do anything about it. Finally, my meddlesome Genestealer launched what could be his last attack on the Space Marines and caused two wounds. Amazingly Sean actually managed to roll well and saved them both before deftly cutting down the brave Tyranid.

### ULTRAMARINES TURN 5

**Sean:** It was obvious that I had no way of winning the game, and so decided in heroic fashion (in my eyes at least) to bite the bullet and take down as many Tyranids as I could.

### CHARGING

Charging models get an additional attack representing them firing their guns, and the impetus of their assault. Because of the nature of certain weapons, (the time it takes to load, aim and fire) rapid fire weapons may not be used if the firer intends to charge in the same turn.

Granted, on my form so far, there wouldn't be too many worried xenos on the battlefield, but my luck had to change soon. The shooting began well. Squad Atreus destroyed two Termagants, though my bad luck returned to haunt me as the flamer in Squad Octavian somehow managed to kill only one of three Genestealers. One of the more adept Space Marines managed to wipe out another with a single shot. After opting to assault, my moment of death was at hand. Squad Atreus threw themselves at the Termagants, and shrugging off three wounding strikes from Nathan, I managed to wound a single xenos only to see Nathan make the Armour Save.

The Genestealers didn't do as much damage as I had feared. After only scoring a wound, which I managed to save, there was still a chance that, thanks to my double attack due to **Charging**, I could destroy the unit and take a (very, very) small victory from the bag. With three wounds scored, I was in with a chance. Yet again, Nathan managed to pull a trick out of the bag, as he somehow managed to make every Armour Save (on a 6+!).

At that point, the powers that be (Adam) decided that I had suffered enough (if only they knew) and called a halt to proceedings. When it came to the final battle, I had failed to rescue the gene-seed, and Macragge was riddled with Tyranid hordes. Curses!



## DOWN, BUT NOT OUT



**Sean:** The shame! Apparently there's a tradition of most people losing their first battle report (or maybe they're trying to let me down gently), so I suppose I could take some consolation from that, but I'm

actually a lot more disappointed than I thought I would be. I really enjoyed playing in this battle report, even though by comparison to my Warhammer battles, it was very much a streamlined version. At the end of the day, that is the point of Battle For Macragge, and it's a testament to the endeavours of the Games Development team that, despite the scenarios being simplified to allow

newcomers an entry route to the game, there is still enough about the missions to allow plot twists that can have you tearing your hair out in frustration. (Of course, I could have said that they give you enormous exhilaration, but after that performance, it would be a bare-faced lie).

As a new player, my tactical prowess is not exactly overwhelming, but I will try and outline one or two (of the many) mistakes I made. One thing has been staring me in the face, concerns the final mission. It now appears obvious that I should have concentrated on taking out the Hive Node with the rocket launcher first, with only Squad Octavian moving towards the objective. I'll be the first to admit though that the number of Tyranids I faced and the excitement of winning the previous fight meant that I didn't exactly approach the final game with an

objective viewpoint. I suppose though that this is one of the plus points of Warhammer 40,000. There is something there for the beginner, but the game offers such a wealth of diversity and different approaches that you can fight the same fight more than once and have a totally different outcome (if only it could have been this one).

The biggest tribute I can pay is that this battle report has inspired me to collect my own army (Tyranids though – I'm not sure I could look another Space Marine model in the face after leading them to their doom). Up until now I had resisted frequent cajoling from those around me to dabble in the world of Warhammer 40,000, but thanks to this, I hope to be a more regular visitor to the gaming tables in Warhammer World.

## FAST AND DEADLY



**Nathan:** Ah, the sweet taste of victory! The Hive Node survived and a swarm of Tyranids poured forth to engulf the already outnumbered Space Marines; Sean made a heroic attempt against the odds but

unfortunately for him it wasn't enough. With my first win under my belt I now had an unbeaten record to boast about to my Studio

colleagues, and a reputation of a worthy opponent to uphold.

One of the reasons why I never ventured into the realms of Warhammer 40,000 before was because there seemed to be a mountain of rules to understand before I could begin. This isn't the case with Battle For Macragge, it was a gentle introduction and perfect for me as a beginner. Now I have experienced this game I have at least a basic understanding of the Warhammer 40,000 rules and the thought of playing a larger game doesn't worry me. I also experienced some of the pros and cons of fighting with a Tyranid army: trading fire

power with the Space Marines is foolhardy but get your Genestealers into assault range and you are bound to cause some damage!

Overall, I was pretty happy with my tactics throughout the three scenarios and don't think I would do much different, even in the game I lost. My advice would be to get those Termagants and Genestealers into combat as quickly as possible, it is better to die that way than to be picked off with a rocket launcher from long range and at least you can take some of those Space Marines with you when you go, and they won't be coming back!

additional attack, their guns, and ault. Because of apons, (the time ire) rapid fire ed if the firer same turn.

ar, there wouldn't on the battlefield, on. The shooting destroyed two ad luck returned to Squad Octavian, only one of three more adept Space out another with a o assault, my and. Squad Atrous ermagants, and atting strikes from ind a single xence he Armour Save. 't do as much ter only scoring o save, there was o my double attack destroy the unit and ctory from the batt . I was in with a managed to pull a somehow managed e (on a 6+!). ers that be (Adam I enough (if only ult to proceedings battle, I had failed Macragge was no s. Curses!





## PAINTING SPACE MARINES

BY STEVE CUMIS



For many fledgling gamers, The Battle For Macragge will be their first steps into the world of building and painting models. This month we're going to show you everything you need to know about painting your first model, from assembly to the final details.

For a large number of people, the first plastic sprue of Space Marines that they've just bought will also be their first contact with the world of modelling. If you are one of these people then don't despair, you are not alone. Most of the people responsible for the stunning armies that regularly grace the pages of this magazine started the same way. While it may seem a little daunting at first, there are a few basic skills that can be quickly mastered and will form a solid base to build on. That's what the following pages are all about.

## TOOLS AND MATERIALS

- Chaos Black spray
- Clippers
- Modelling knife or file
- Tweezers
- PVA woodworking glue
- Plastic glue
- Modelling sand
- Water
- Tissue
- Drybrush
- Standard Brush
- Palette (any non-absorbent surface).
- Citadel Colour paints:
 

● Blood Red	● Bestial Brown
● Vomit Brown	● Graveyard Earth
● Shining Gold	● Boltgun Metal
● Chaos Black	● Ultramarines Blue



## SAFETY TIPS

- Make sure to use the undercoat or varnish sprays only in a well-ventilated area.
- When using a modelling knife, always make sure to cut away from yourself.

## ASSEMBLY

01



Use your clippers to take the parts of the model from the sprue.

02



Make sure to place the flat side of the clipper jaws against the model.

03



When you've freed the model, you'll need to remove any mould lines and vents.

04



Remove these by scrapping them away with your modelling knife or file.

05



Apply a thin film of plastic glue to the parts being joined.

06



Glue the backpack and gun to the model. Then glue the model to the base.



## UNDERCOATING

01



Shake the can of undercoating spray for at least one minute.

02



Holding the can approximately 12" from the model, spray on an even layer of undercoat. Shake the can periodically during this process.

03



Clear the nozzle of the can by spraying upside down until only propellant comes out.

04



You'll probably find that there are some gaps in the undercoat.

05



You can cover any of these with watered down Chaos Black paint.



## PAINTING

01



Load your Small Drybrush with Boltgun Metal paint and then draw it across a piece of tissue until it barely leaves any colour.

02



Draw your brush across the weapon and backpack vents. Paint should be deposited on the raised areas.

03



Load your Standard Brush with Ultramarines Blue paint, and use your palette to get rid of any excess paint.

04



Now you need to paint the majority of the Space Marine's armour Ultramarines Blue.

This technique is known as drybrushing, and comes in very handy for painting any textured surfaces. It's also quite a messy technique, which is why we do it first.

It's better to have too little paint on your brush than to have too much, as you can always add more paint later, but removing blobs of paint from your models can be difficult.



## PAINTING CONTINUED...

05



By making sure that there isn't too much paint on your brush, you can draw your brush across any panel lines without clogging them.

06



The first coat of paint may appear slightly streaked.

07



Simply apply another layer or two to get a clean, flat colour.

08



Carefully paint the chest eagle and shoulder pad rims with Shining Gold.

09



Using the same brush as before, paint the eyes with Blood Red paint.

10



To achieve a good point to your brush wet the bristles and slowly turn the brush as you drag it across a piece of tissue.

Acrylic paints dry quickly – clean your brush regularly while painting.

If you make any mistakes, wait until the paint dries and then repaint it with the original colour.

## APPLYING TRANSFERS

01



Select a design and cut it from the transfer sheet with your modelling knife.

02



Place the transfer on a piece of tissue and use a brush to soak it with water.

When the transfer begins to separate from its backing paper, slide it into place on the model.

03



Allow the water to dry from the transfer and then paint around it with Ultramarines Blue.



## BASING

01

Use your Small Drybrush to paint the base with PVA woodworking glue.

02

Pour modelling sand onto the base.

03

Shake off any excess sand and return it to its container.

04

Use your Small Drybrush to paint the sand with watered down Bestial Brown paint.

05

With the same brush, drybrush the sand with Vomit Brown paint.

06

Paint the edge of the base with Graveyard Earth, using your Standard Brush.



The finished squad ready for gaming



# BATTLE FOR MACRAGGE – THE DESERT

BY STEVE CUMIS

If you've started gaming in the Warhammer 40,000 universe with The Battle For Macragge, then you'll already have a basic set of miniatures and terrain. So, where do you go from here? The most obvious next step is to expand your collection of warriors, but you should also be thinking about getting a collection of terrain together.

Looking through the rulebook and the pages of this magazine, you'll have seen a lot of gorgeous boards with great terrain. At this stage you may be unsure about where to begin, but not to worry – the trick is to start with the basics and then build up your collection, one piece at a time.

For the purposes of this article we're going to talk about desert terrain, not only because it's where the Macragge missions are set, but because it's quite easy to create and should be a familiar setting for anyone who's ever watched a sci-fi film or TV show.

## THE GAMING TABLE

The things that you need to make a basic gaming table are actually fairly simple. The first and most obvious of these is the table itself. The table surface can go a long way towards establishing the right atmosphere for your games. Later on, you may want to make a board specifically for gaming on, but for the moment, a normal table will do. You just need something in a suitable colour to cover it.

A beige coloured cloth is just the thing, to create the appearance of a desert. You can use a plain coloured cloth, but patterned material is also available, and provided the pattern itself isn't too distracting, it can provide a viable alternative.

To create a more convincing texture, simply sprinkling sand onto the cloth can be surprisingly effective. By placing books, upturned bowls and other objects under the cloth, you can create basic hills and obstacles that will block lines of sight and create a more dynamic battlefield.

## MAKING YOUR FIRST TERRAIN PIECE

Once you've got the basic gaming surface ready, you can begin to think about making your first simple terrain pieces. The best place to start is with a hill made from a cluster of polystyrene boulders. These can be built quickly, in a variety of shapes and sizes.

*When you're building terrain, it's always a good idea to keep a model to hand to make sure there's enough room on ledges or in gaps that you want them to pass through.*

## TOOLS AND MATERIALS

- Large paintbrush
- PVA woodworking glue
- Modelling sand and gravel
- Polystyrene
- Thin wood or thick card
- Textured paint
- Ready-mixed filler
- Citadel Colour paints:
  - Dark Flesh
  - Vomit Brown
  - Bleached Bones

## MAKING A BASE

Making a base is pretty much essential for keeping clusters of rocks together, but can also make other terrain pieces more resistant to damage. The base can be made from stiff card, foamboard, or even wood for extra strength. Most of the time it doesn't really matter whether you make the base before or after you make the terrain piece but, as in the case of the rock clusters, it's usually easier to do it first, and then build onto it.

Bases look best with a bevelled edge and a coating of textured material to match the gaming table.





ue  
gravel  
ard

Dark Flesh  
Vomit Brown  
Bleached Bone

nuch essential for  
together, but can  
ieces more  
base can be  
mboard, or even  
Most of the time  
hether you make  
ou make the  
e case of the rock  
r to do it first,

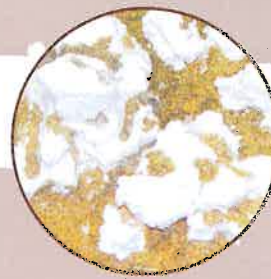
a bevelled edge  
material to



**1** Take a piece of stiff card and cut out a base. Then break your polystyrene into rough chunks and glue these onto the base.



**2** Apply filler to the gaps between the chunks and smooth off the beaded surface of the polystyrene.



**3** Glue patches of gravel and sand onto the chunks of polystyrene, and then onto the rest of the base. Then paint the entire model with textured paint.



**4** Next you'll need to paint the model. First, paint the entire model with textured paint.

## DRYBRUSHING

While there are a wide variety of techniques suitable for painting miniatures, there are only a few that are really suited to painting terrain, and for a desert landscape, one in particular comes to mind – drybrushing.

Drybrushing is a fast and attractive technique for building up colour on a textured surface. To drybrush your model, take a brush (preferably an old one as drybrushing tends to damage brushes) and work your chosen colour into it, then wipe any excess onto your palette. The paint will need to be fairly dense. If the paint is too thin, let it dry a little on your palette before you begin.

With the paint on the brush, take a piece of tissue or news paper and run the brush over it until the brush strokes leave almost no marks, even when pressure is applied. To best cover the large, flat areas of most terrain you will need to have your brush as dry as possible. This will mean that you need to scrub the brush quite hard onto your model to deposit any paint.



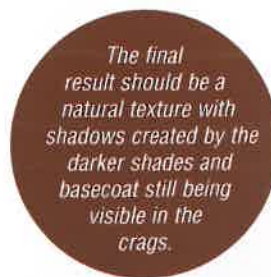
**5** Paint on the colour in layers, starting with a basecoat of Dark Flesh.



**6** Next, drybrush a layer of Vomit Brown.



**7** For the final highlight, switch to a slightly smaller brush and drybrush the model with Bleached Bone.



The final result should be a natural texture with shadows created by the darker shades and basecoat still being visible in the crags.

## ON TO THE NEXT STAGE

Once you've finished your first hill, it should be easy for you to start building up a collection of these structures in different shapes and sizes. After that, you can move on to creating some basic buildings or even a

purpose-built gaming table. There's a wealth of instructional material available to help you do any of these things, from articles in *White Dwarf* or the web, or in the *How To Make Wargames Terrain* book.



# THE BATTLE RAGES ON

ADDITIONAL SCENARIOS FOR THE BATTLE FOR MACRAGGE, BY ADAM TROKE

The Battle For Macragge box set contains a wealth of scenarios for new gamers to immerse themselves in the game of Warhammer 40,000. For those of you who have already exhausted those missions, Adam Troke provides three more for you to enjoy.

**B**y the time you are reading this, there is a good chance that you have already fought your way through the six exciting missions in Battle For Macragge, and are thirsting for more ways to use the contents of the box! No doubt your Ultramarines are steeped in Tyranid blood, and battle weary from hours of hard fighting across kitchen tables, living room floors and beautifully crafted gaming boards. So what we have here are three new missions, and a fun campaign system to link all nine missions and extend your battle into one great narrative!

The new missions contained in this issue of White Dwarf can either be used on their own, as standalone battles, or combined with the contents of The Battle For Macragge to make a narrative campaign, as detailed below.

## THE CAMPAIGN

Squads Octavian and Atreus collectively form Tactical Squad Octavian, led by Brother Sergeant Octavian himself, a battle-hardened warrior who has fought the enemies of the Imperium for decades. Together these ten Space Marines can take on almost any foe, with nothing but their faith in the Emperor and the weapons in their hands. The Tyranids, throughout The Battle For Macragge, represent the vanguard of a far greater menace. The spore mines, Genestealers and Termagants are the very tip of the Tyranid war machine. Indifferent to casualties, these forward elements will disrupt the populace of a world, causing havoc and fear while their hive fleet brings its power to bear.

To play The Battle For Macragge as a campaign simply play the missions from the book plus these additional missions in order. The extra three missions are included in this article, and add even more depth to the story of Lieutenant Varras and Tactical Squad Octavian battling against the Tyranid menace.

- Mission 1 – Escape the Crash Site
- Mission 1.1 – Preserve the Gene-seed
- Mission 2 – Rescue Varras
- Mission 3 – Disarm the Fusion Core
- Mission 4 – The Incessant Xeno Tide
- Mission 4.1 – Night Attack
- Mission 5 – Reinforcements
- Mission 5.1 – Destroy the Nests
- Mission 6 – Purge the Xenos

## CAMPAIGN SPECIAL RULES

**Ultramarines Casualties** – The Space Marine physiology is very different from that of a 'normal' human. Genetically modified to be the most perfect of warriors, Space Marines are more than capable of healing horrific injuries and fighting on, despite wounds that would kill a normal man many times over. After each mission, roll a dice for each Space Marine model removed as a casualty. On the roll of a 3+ the model has overcome its injuries, and is available for use later in the campaign.

**Varras** – Lieutenant Varras distinguished himself in the events of The Battle For Macragge as a true hero of the Imperium. With devotion and zeal he fought against creatures no man could expect to take on and survive, and yet he lived.

Despite his wounds, he always fought on to assist the Ultramarines in keeping the gene-seed from the Tyranid menace. After any mission in which Varras is removed as a casualty, roll a D6. On the score of a 4+ Varras has overcome his injuries and is available for use later in the campaign.

**The Numberless Horde** – The greatest threat that the Tyranids pose to the Imperium is the sheer size and scale of its hive fleets. Producing millions upon millions of different brood creatures at a rate no other race in the galaxy is equipped to match. Tyranid models that are removed from play are always available later in the mission, and throughout the campaign.

The missions that make up this campaign are designed to be evenly balanced, giving a fair chance for either side to achieve victory (although some missions are certainly harder than others).

Some veteran players of Warhammer 40,000 like to emphasise the storytelling element of the hobby over the competitive – and as such like to add a narrative theme to the games. The suggestions below will allow players to recreate the missions, giving

advantages to a player who does well, or penalties if they do badly. Be warned though, just as Octavian and his warriors would have struggled if they had made a big mistake, you too as the player could find yourself in a sticky situation if you make a serious tactical error early on.



## MISSION 1.1: PRESERVE THE GENE-SEED

If Varras was killed during *Escape the Crash Site*, the Tyranid player may place one extra Termagant on the board. The Ultramarines player may choose where this extra model starts the game. If Varras reached the exit zone during *Escape the Crash Site*, the Tyranid player does not begin with any Spore Mines in play at the start of this mission.

## MISSION 2: RESCUE VARRAS

If Varras was killed during *Preserve the Gene-seed*, the Tyranid player may make a free move with each spore mine in play as if he had rolled a 'HIT' on the Scatter dice. This move may not take a spore mine into contact with Varras. This move is done immediately before the Ultramarines' first turn. If Varras survived *Preserve the Gene-seed*, the Ultramarines player may make a free move with Varras, and fire his bolt pistol once, before the game begins.

## MISSION 3: DISARM THE FUSION CORE

If the Tyranids were successful in *Rescue Varras*, the number of Genestealer 'kills' the Ultramarines need to inflict in this scenario is raised from 12 to 15. If the Ultramarines were successful, Lieutenant Varras has eight turns to disarm the fusion core instead of six.



#### MISSION 4: THE INCESSANT XENO TIDE

If the Ultramarines failed in their objectives in *Disarm the Fusion Core*, the Tyranid player may deploy up to three Genestealers removed as casualties as a new brood at the end of each Tyranid turn. This new brood must be deployed further than 12" away from any Ultramarines model. If the Ultramarines were successful in *Disarm the Fusion Core*, the Ultramarines player may roll 3D6, and pick any two, when determining how far the Ultramarines fall back each turn.

#### MISSION 4.1: NIGHT ATTACK

Squad Atreus has not yet fought in *The Battle For Macragge*, so neither the Tyranid nor the Ultramarines player gets any advantage in this game.

#### MISSION 5: REINFORCEMENTS

If the Tyranid player succeeded in *Night Attack* there is no need to roll to determine how many Termagants are deployed at the start of this scenario. The number will be ten. If the Ultramarines player succeeded, then the Tyranid player cannot have more than eight Termagants in play during this mission.

#### MISSION 5.1: DESTROY THE NESTS

At this point, Squads Octavian and Atreus have joined forces to form cohesive force. As a result, victories from both *The Incessant Xeno Tide* and *Reinforcements* will have a bearing on this mission.

If the Tyranids were victorious in *The Incessant Xeno Tide*, any rolls of 1 on the chart to determine where the Termagants may enter the field of play are counted as rolls of 6.

If the Tyranids won in *Reinforcements*, the Tyranid player may start with D6 Termagants on the board. The Ultramarines player may choose, however, which board edge this brood initially enters play from.

If the Ultramarines were victorious in *The Incessant Xeno Tide*, any rolls of a 6 on the chart to determine where the Termagants may enter the field of play are counted as rolls of 1.

If the Ultramarines won in *Reinforcements*, either Squad Octavian, or Squad Atreus may make a free 6" move before the game begins (the Ultramarines player may choose which).

#### MISSION 6: PURGE THE XENOS

If the Tyranid player was victorious in *Destroy the Nests* the Tyranid player may place up to three unused Spore Mines anywhere on the table, no closer than 3" to any Ultramarines model.

If the Ultramarines player was victorious in *Destroy the Nests*, one Ultramarines squad may fire once using the normal shooting rules, before the first turn. By combining the missions from *The Battle For Macragge* together with these new missions, players can have fun recreating some of the most deadly and exciting moments of the Tyranid invasion.

You will have noticed that once one side has won a mission it becomes easier for that side to win consecutive missions. *Mission 5 – Reinforcements*, for example is exceptionally tough for the Ultramarines to win. However, if they can get a victory in *Mission 4.1 – Night Attack*, *Reinforcements* will become that much easier for them.

So what are you waiting for? Gather up your models, invite your regular gaming friends round, and fight *The Battle For Macragge* again, but this time as an exciting narrative campaign. Try swapping sides to see who does the best at the various missions. I'm sure you'll agree, it's a lot more fun when you're telling a story as you play!

#### SEED

*Escape the*...  
...er may place  
...e board.  
...ay choose  
...rts the game.  
...one during  
...Tyranid player  
...ore Mines in  
...ision.

#### VARRAS

*reserve the Gen*...  
...make a free  
...in play as if he  
...tter dice. This  
...nine into contact  
...ne immediately  
...turn. If Varras  
...seed, the  
...ke a free move  
...pistol once,

#### ORE

*ful in Rescue*...  
...tealer 'kills' the  
...n this scenario  
...Ultramarines  
...Varras has eight  
...ore instead of six



*Macragge has been overrun, and only the Space Marines can vanquish the alien threat.*



# MISSION 1.1

## PRESERVE THE GENE-SEED

### INTRODUCTION

Lieutenant Varras shook his vox-caster furiously, hoping that his desperate message was heard by someone, anyone. Clutching the gene-seed canister close to him, Varras checked the load on his bolt pistol. From the raised ground he could see the hideous spore mines, vile bloated sacks of ichor and bile, drifting in the soft breeze. Until help came, he would have to stay close to the downed lander, laying in a smoking wreck below him. With a start he saw them; small ugly creatures, with chitinous plates and bright, evil eyes. Termagants! Lieutenant Varras racked his bolt pistol, and prayed that the Emperor would send help soon. Until then Varras would have to fight for his life.

### FORCES

#### Ultramarines

Varras

#### Tyranids

2 Termagants

3 Infestation markers

Spore mines

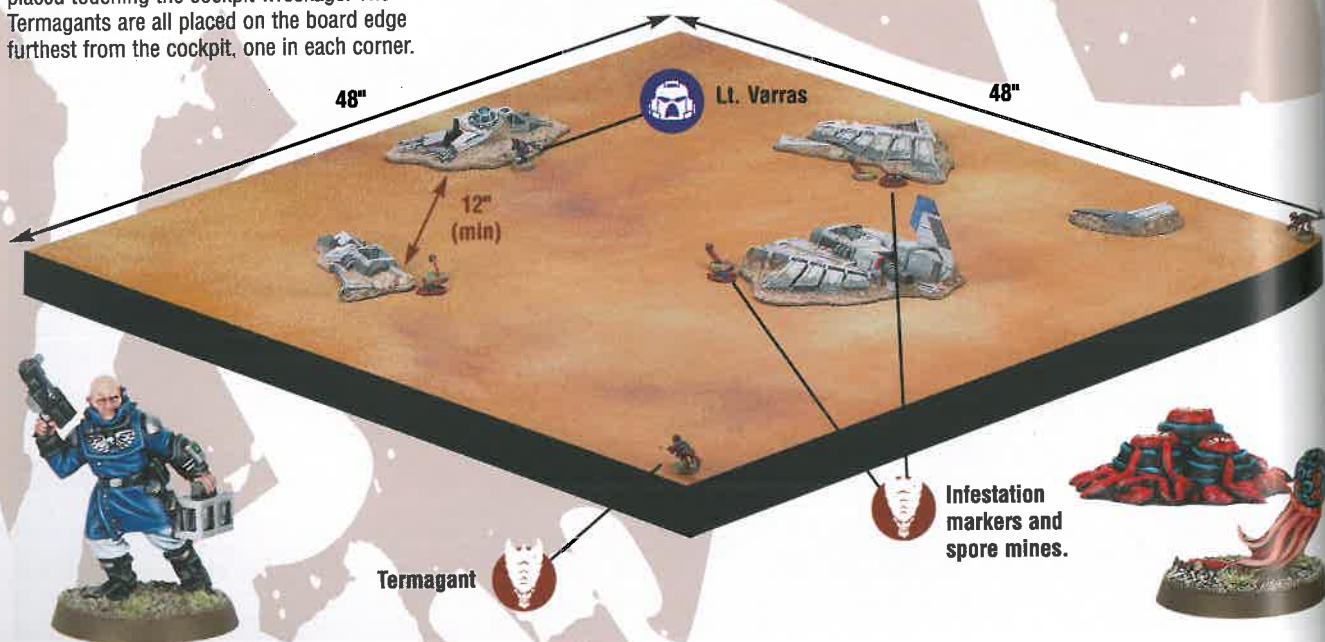
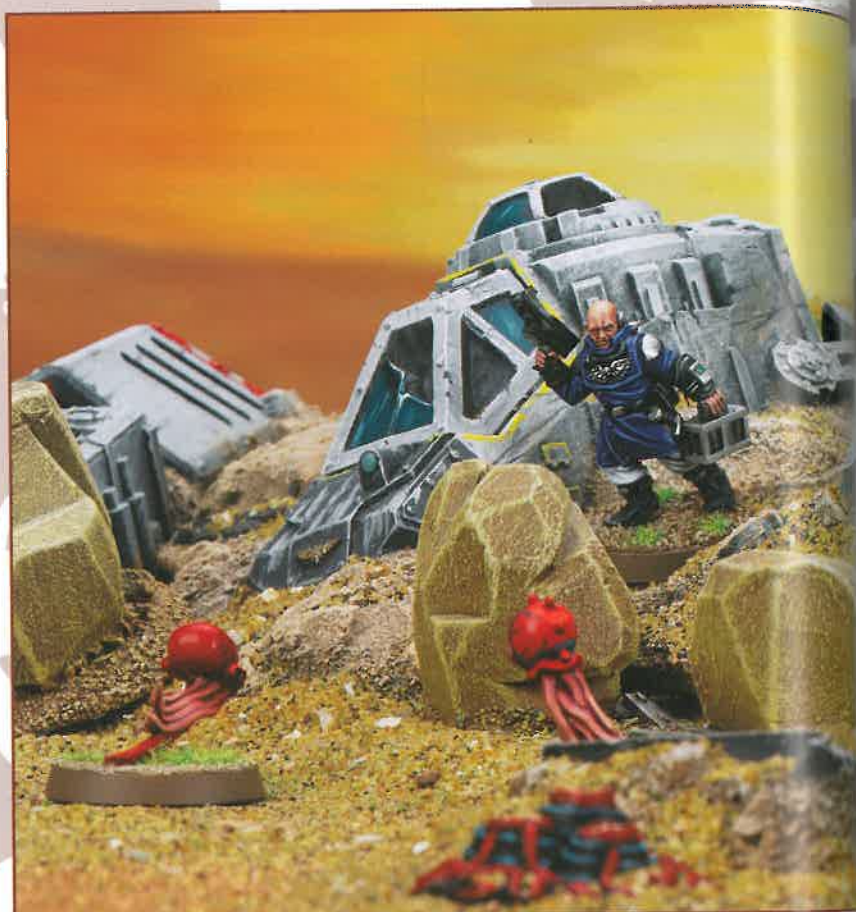
### OBJECTIVE

**Ultramarines win** Varras is still alive after 10 turns.

**Tyranids win** Varras has been killed before 10 turns have expired.

### SETUP

The wreckage is set up as Mission 1. Varras is placed touching the cockpit wreckage. The Termagants are all placed on the board edge furthest from the cockpit, one in each corner.





## ULTRAMARINES RULES

**Move:** Each turn Lieutenant Varras may move up to 6" in any direction in the Ultramarines' turn. Varras may move over wreckage if he wishes. To do so, the Ultramarines player rolls 2D6 and moves Varras up to the number rolled on the highest dice.

**Bolt Pistol:** Varras can shoot his bolt pistol at one Termagant or spore mine per turn. If Varras does not move, he may shoot twice instead of once. However, both shots must be at the same target. Varras hits on a roll of 4+, and wounds Termagants on a score of 3+. Bolt rounds are too powerful for the armour plates of a Termagant to protect them.

However, if the Termagant is touching wreckage, it may save itself on the roll of a 5+, representing it ducking into safety, the wreckage deflecting the shot. Spore mines are affected by shooting, as described in The Battle For Macragge, Mission 1.

## TYRANIDS RULES

**Spore Mines:** The spore mines in this scenario work as described in The Battle For Macragge. The Tyranid player may use Acid, Poison or Exploding spore mines as determined by their models.

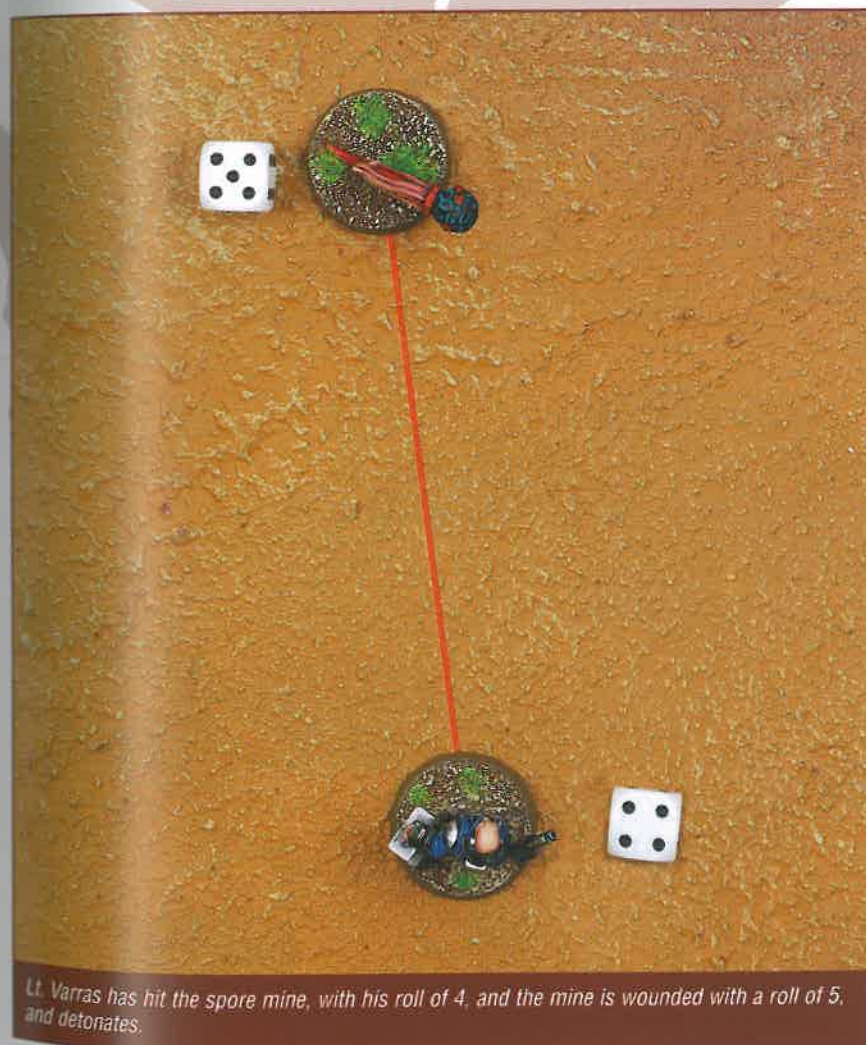
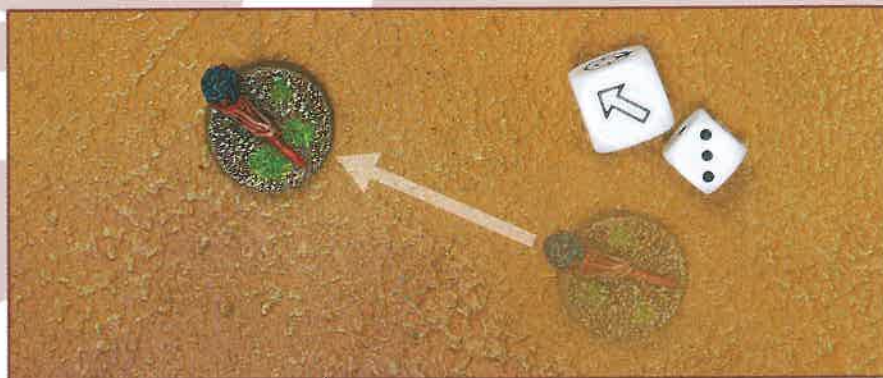
**Move:** Every Tyranid turn, each spore mine moves D6". Roll the Scatter dice to see which direction the mine moves in. If the dice rolls a 'HIT', the Tyranid player can move the mine in any direction. If a spore mine is shot, or moves into base-to-base contact with Varras at any point during its movement, it detonates.

**Assault:** Termagants that end their move within 6" Varras may assault. They may do this even if they fired their fleshborers. They follow all the previous rules for moving into base contact, and gain one extra attack on the turn they charge into assault. The Termagants

will strike first, needing 4+ to hit and 4+ to wound. Varras may take armour saves as usual. If he survives Varras may strike back with one attack, hitting on a 4+ and wounding on a 4+. If there is a combat left from the Ultramarines' turn, fight again in the Tyranid turn. Once in close combat with the Ultramarines, they may not move away until all enemy models in the unit are dead.

**Fleshborers:** Termagants carry deadly fleshborers, lethal weapons that spit live ammunition at their victims. Termagants can fire once each up to 12", even if they move. Due to the way they work, fleshborers do not get extra shots if the firer remains stationary. Termagants hit Varras with their fleshborers on a 4+, and they wound him on a 3+. Varras will be saved from any wounds inflicted by fleshborers on a roll of 5+.

**Fleet of Claw:** Instead of firing its fleshborer, a Termagant may make a special move if it wishes. Simply roll a D6 instead of shooting. This is the number of inches the model may move, representing it scurrying across the ground as fast as possible. Termagants may even use Fleet of Claw to move across wreckage, without any additional penalty.



Lt. Varras has hit the spore mine, with his roll of 4, and the mine is wounded with a roll of 5, and detonates.

## SPORE MINE VARIANTS



**Acid  
spore mine**



**Poison spore mine**



**Exploding  
spore mine**



# MISSION 4.1 NIGHT ATTACK

## INTRODUCTION

Battle brother Atrous peered into the gloom, his enhanced vision allowing him to discern shapes and features in the darkness no normal man could ever hope to. Squad Octavian had been dropped off close to the objective area, while Atrous and his brethren had to march through the night. The mission imperative was to rendezvous with Octavian with all haste, even if that meant a forced march through Macragge's nocturnal cycle.

In the dark he saw the alien. A filthy xeno, with four sinewy arms, and a hunched, armoured back. With a few curt orders the squad was ready for battle, bolters raised.

"Squad," Atrous bellowed, "choose your targets carefully, show no mercy."

## FORCES

Ultramarines  
Tyranids

Squad Atrous  
6 Genestealers

## OBJECTIVES

Ultramarines win

Three or more Ultramarines can move into the objective area.

Tyranid win

Three or more Ultramarines are killed.

## GENESTEALER ENTRY CHART

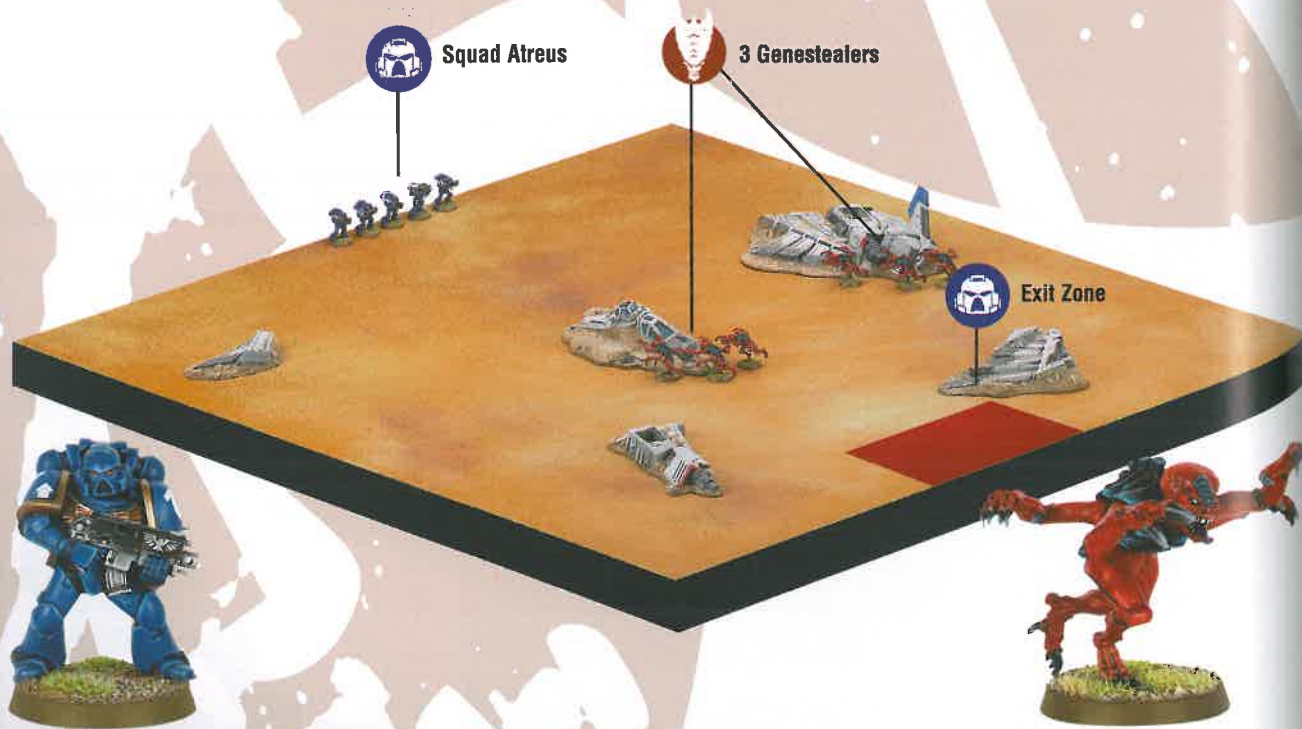
- 1 Ultramarines player may choose which board edge the Genestealers enter play from.
- 2-5 Consult the diagram to see which edge the Genestealers enter play from.
- 6 The Tyranid player may choose which board edge the Genestealers enter play from.



## SET-UP

Place Squad Atrous in the centre of one table edge. The wreckage is set up by the Tyranid player, with no piece closer than 12" to any board edge. The pieces may not be closer

than 6" to each other. The Tyranid player may place the Genestealers, in two broods of three, touching any piece of wreckage, providing no Genestealer is within 18" of an Ultramarines model.







*The Tyranids swarm en masse around the Ultramarines.*

## ULTRAMARINES RULES

**Move:** Squads (or units) are a group of models that move, shoot and assault together. All models in a squad must always end their move within 2" of another model from the same unit. The squad may move up to 6" in any direction in the Ultramarines' turn. If they move over wreckage roll two D6, the higher scoring dice is the maximum distance they can move this turn.

**Night Fighting:** The darkness of Macragge's nocturnal cycle makes shooting difficult, even for Space Marines. Once the Ultramarines player has chosen a target, but before measuring range and rolling dice to determine hits, the player must determine how far his Space Marines can see in the dark.

Roll 2D6 and multiply the result by three. This produces a number between 6 and 36. This score is the distance that the Ultramarines can fire this turn (although the maximum ranges for bolters and the missile launcher still apply). If their intended target is outside of this range, those shots are wasted. Roll each turn to determine this range, otherwise shooting works as described in The Battle For Macragge.

**Assault:** Ultramarines may assault as described in The Battle For Macragge.

## TYRANIDS RULES

**Move:** Each Genestealer brood may move up to 6" in any direction in the Tyranid turn. If

they move over wreckage roll two D6, the higher scoring dice is the maximum distance they can move this turn.

**Assault:** Any Genestealers whose Assault move brings them into base contact with the Space Marines will fight in close combat. When moving the Genestealers into contact, they can spread out and attack different targets, so long as models from the same unit are no more than 2" apart. They cannot bypass unengaged models or move through gaps narrower than their base width.

## "The darkness of Macragge's nocturnal cycle makes shooting difficult, even for Space Marines"

Genestealers are very fast and so get to strike first. They have two attacks, but on the turn they charge into assault, they gain a bonus attack, giving them three for that turn. D6 rolls of 3, 4 or 5 hit their target and have a chance to wound them. Space Marines are wounded on a 4+. Any To Hit roll that produced a 6 means the Genestealer instantly rends their opponent apart, tearing through their armour and killing them outright.

**Saving throws:** Models wounded in assault can make an Armour Save roll, to see if their

armour prevents the wound. The Space Marines need to roll a 3+ to have their power armour save them. Saves cannot be made against Genestealers that roll a 6 to hit – their claws can punch straight through armour! Remove any Space Marine who fails his save.

**Fighting Back:** Any models that survive an assault strike back by rolling one attack each. The Space Marines hit the Genestealers on a 4+ and inflict a wound on a subsequent roll of 4+. Genestealers have their own natural armour, and can avoid being wounded on a

roll of 6 for their Armour Save. Genestealers that fail to save are removed.

**Continual Tide:** At the end of each Tyranid turn, on the roll of a 4+ the Tyranid player may create one new brood using three Genestealers previously removed as casualties. These are deployed touching the centre of a randomly determined board edge. The Tyranid player should roll a D6, and consult the diagram. If there are not enough Genestealers available to create a new brood, then no reinforcements are brought into play that turn.



# MISSION 5.1

## DESTROY THE NESTS

### INTRODUCTION

Sergeant Octavian surveyed the scene before him, scowling at the scattered wreckage and the slowly drifting spore mines. Quickly he ordered the squads into a battle line, using the vox-caster built into his helmet to give his orders.

*"Brothers, our time is short, but we must remove the xenos from this area before we proceed. Hunt them down. Destroy the filthy taint of their infestation. Leave none alive."*

With a shout of anger, the Ultramarines began their advance.

### OBJECTIVE

**Ultramarines win** If all the Tyranids are destroyed, and four or less Ultramarines have been killed.

**Tyranid win** If more than four Ultramarines are slain.

### FORCES

**Ultramarines** Squad Octavian + Varras  
Squad Atreus

**Tyranids** 3 Infestation markers  
Termagants

### TERMAGANT ENTRY CHART

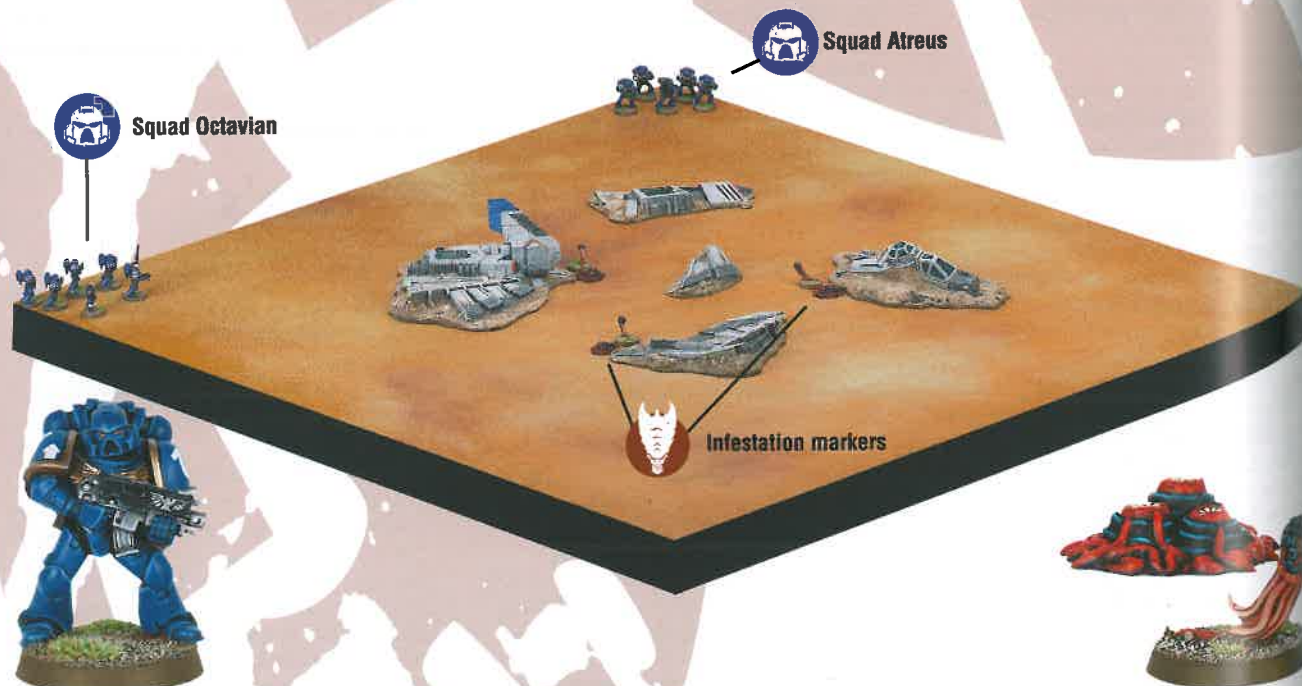
- 1 Ultramarines player may choose which board edge the Termagant enter play from.
- 2-5 Consult the diagram to see which edge the Termagant enter play from.
- 6 The Tyranid player may choose which board edge the Termagant enter play from.



### SETUP

The wreckage is set up with no piece closer than 12" from any board edge. The pieces may not be closer than 6" to each other. Squads Octavian and Atreus are set up on one board edge, with one squad starting in each

board corner. The Tyranid player may place three Infestation markers on the board – each must be touching a piece of wreckage, and cannot be closer than 6" to one another. Place one spore mine touching each Infestation marker.







*Despite overwhelming odds, the Space Marines will fight to the last.*

## ULTRAMARINES RULES

**Move:** The Ultramarines squads can move up to 6" a turn, but may not move within 1" of Termagants unless assaulting them. If the Ultramarines end their move within 6" of a group of Termagants, they can assault.

**Shoot:** Each entire squad of Ultramarines may shoot at one unit of Termagants per turn. If the squad has not moved, it may fire the missile launcher and all of the Space Marines with bolters may fire one shot at targets up to 24" away, or rapid fire at targets within 12". If they have moved, the missile launcher cannot fire and the Space Marines with bolters may only rapid fire at targets within 12".

**The Missile Launcher:** The Space Marine with the missile launcher can only shoot if the squad remains stationary – he has to steady his aim and brace himself. The weapon gets one shot a turn, with whichever missile type the player chooses, and shoots up to 48". It hits on a roll of 3+ and fires two kinds of missile, one designed to attack enemy troops and one used to destroy heavily armoured targets.

**Krak Missile:** A high-explosive anti-tank round the krak missile is more than a match for any living target. A Krak shell wounds Infestation markers, spore mines and Termagants on a 2+. None of these get Armour Saves against it, although they may take cover saves as normal. In addition the krak missile is so powerful that an Infestation marker wounded by it is killed outright.

**Frag Missile:** An anti-personnel explosive round designed to shower an area with razor sharp metal fragments. If the shot hits, place the small Blast marker over one of the target models. That model, and any others whose bases are covered by the marker, are wounded on a 3+. Any model whose base is touched by the marker but not covered will be hit on a 4+, and if hit may then also be wounded on a successive roll of 3+.

**Flamer:** To fire the flamer, use the Template when shooting with the flamer-armed Space Marine. The Template may not touch any friendly models. Any Termagant touched by the flamer by the Template is incinerated on a D6 roll of 3+, while infestation markers are destroyed on a 4+. When hit, mines detonate. Detonation follows the rules as explained in Battle For Macragge.

**Assault:** If the Ultramarines end their move within 6" of a Termagant unit, and did not fire, they can charge into close combat. Move each Space Marine up to 6" to make base contact with the nearest Termagant. They can spread out and attack different targets, so long as all models from the unit are within 2" of another model from the same unit. They cannot bypass unengaged models or move through gaps narrower than their base width.

In close combat, each Space Marine rolls one dice to hit, but gains an extra attack, and therefore rolls two dice, on the turn they charge into assault. They need a 3+ to hit and 3+ to wound the Termagants. If wounded, Termagants may make an Armour Save on a D6 roll of 6, as their tough hides and bone plates protect them. Any that fail their Armour Save are removed.

However, Termagants are as fast as the Space Marines, and strike back at the same time – even those that would have been removed after being wounded (lay these models down to remind you to remove them after they have attacked). They roll one dice each needing a 4+ to hit and 5+ to wound the Space Marines.

Wounded Space Marines must roll 3+ for their Armour Save or be removed. Once the Ultramarines are in close combat with a Termagant unit, they may not move away until all Termagants in the unit are dead.

## TYRANIDS RULES

**Spore Mines:** The spore mines in this scenario work as described in The Battle For Macragge. The Tyranid player may use Acid, Poison or Exploding spore mines as determined by their models.

**Termagants:** Drawn either by the sound of violence or by some strange alien communication, Termagants are swarming the area, hunting down the Ultramarines warriors. At the start of second Tyranid turn, and each turn afterwards, roll D6. The score rolled is the number of Termagants that Tyranid player can move onto the board. These Termagants are considered a brood, each model maintaining unit coherency. There may never be more than 10 Termagants in play. To determine from which edge the Termagants enter play, roll a D6 and reference the chart opposite. Termagants always enter play from the central point on a board edge.

**Shoot:** Termagants are different to Genestealers, hunting their prey with bio-organic weapons called fleshborers rather than tooth and claw. Termagants can shoot up to 12". Each Termagant rolls one dice when they shoot (whether they moved or not) hitting on a 4+ and wounding on a further roll of 4+. Wounded Space Marines must roll 3+ for their Armour Save or be removed. The Ultramarines player chooses which models are lost.

**Fleet of Claw:** Instead of firing its fleshborer, a Termagant may make a special move if it wishes. Simply roll a D6 instead of shooting. This is the number of inches the model may move, representing it scurrying across the ground as fast as possible. Termagants may even use Fleet of Claw to move across wreckage, without any additional penalty.

**Assault:** Termagants that end their move within 6" of the Space Marines may assault. They may do this even if they fired their fleshborers. They follow all the previous rules for moving into base contact, and gain one extra attack on the turn they charge into assault. The Termagants and Space Marines will fight simultaneously, as detailed in the Space Marine Assault section. If there is a combat left from the Ultramarines' turn, fight again in the Tyranid turn. Once in close combat with the Ultramarines, they may not move away until all enemy models in the unit are dead.



**SUNDAY OCTOBER 24TH 2004**  
**HORDERN PAVILION**  
**MOORE PARK SYDNEY**  
**AUSTRALIA**





2004

# GAMESDAY & GOLDEN DEMON 2004

## AUSTRALIA

**TICKETS ON SALE\***  
**12TH JULY 2004**

\* TICKETS AVAILABLE FROM ALL GAMES WORKSHOP STORES  
AND HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE ON (02) 9829 6111.



# GOLDEN DEMON

## PRE-REGISTER ONLINE

Once again you will have the option to pre-register for Golden Demon. This means that on the day, all you'll need to do is walk up to the Express Counter and hand your entry in, leaving you more time to play games, enjoy the displays, and check out your competition.

Just visit our Website

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com), follow the links from the Oz News page to the Golden Demon page, and then fill out and submit the pre-registration form.

If you have any problems or questions about pre-registering, please contact Games Workshop Direct on (02) 9829 6111, or you ask about it in any Games Workshop store.

## GOLDEN DEMON 2004 COMPETITOR GUIDELINES

- Each competitor is allowed to lodge a maximum of 3 entries across categories 1-14 - so long as they meet each category's criteria. They may choose to enter an additional entry in the Open category 15 - entry in this category doesn't count to their maximum. However, you may only enter once in any category. All entries to the Golden Demon Competition must be painted Citadel miniatures, Forgeworld or Imperial Armour models or scratch-built models that you have sculpted yourself.
- Conversions are allowed, but MUST be consistent with the atmosphere of the game world and conform to spirit and ethos of the Games Workshop universes.
- Except in the Duel, and Open categories entries must be mounted on the base size appropriate to the model (in most cases that's the one it is sold with or which it is allowed in game system rules). Any scenic bases cannot be larger than double the width or height of the base the model comes on. Except in the Duel, and Open categories all models must be removable from any scenic base to allow viewing of the model on its own merits.
- All entries to the 2004 Golden Demon Competition must be **personally** handed in by the entrant and registered at the Hordern Pavilion, Moore Park, Sydney on Sunday the 24th of October 2004, as

early as 9am and no later than 12pm. All entries must be picked up on the day of the event, by the entrant in person, at the specified times.

- Competitors will be fully responsible for the transport of their own entries to and from the event and for the storage of their transport and packing materials on the day.
- Games Workshop reserves the right to refuse entry to the competition.
- Once they are booked in, Games Workshop undertakes to treat all entries with the greatest care, but will accept no responsibility for any loss or damage to individual entries. Entry to the competition is at the competitor's own risk.
- Due to licensing restrictions, entries to non The Lord of the Rings™ categories may not include components from The Lord of the Rings Strategy Battle Game™ range, and vice-versa.
- Entry to the competition gives Games Workshop the right to display, photograph and publish an entry as they see fit.
- The Golden Demon Slayer first prize can only be won by entries into Categories 1-11. Though eligible this year to enter some categories Games Workshop Staff are not eligible to win the Slayer prize.
- Finally, while you may not agree with the outcome of the competition, the judges' decision is final.

## GOLDEN DEMON CATEGORIES

### 01. WARHAMMER SINGLE MINIATURE

This category is open to single Warhammer miniatures on standard slottabase sizes 20x20mm or 25x25mm.

### 02. WARHAMMER LARGE MODEL

This category is open to Warhammer miniatures on slottabase sizes: 25x50mm, 40x40mm, 50x50mm or 50x100mm. This category is for all Warhammer cavalry, single monsters and chariots. This covers ridden monsters, Dragons, Greater Daemons, Trolls, Ogres, single Chariots, etc.

### 03. WARHAMMER REGIMENT

This category consists of a collection of 5-20 models from Warhammer Fantasy Battle. This category is open to Warhammer miniatures on slottabase sizes: 20x20mm, 25x 25mm, 25x50mm, or 40x40mm. Entries for this category must consist of a legal unit entry chosen from the appropriate army list. The unit must include a Standard Bearer, a Musician, and a unit Champion if available to it. This category does not include a unit of chariots and Characters cannot join units. If mounted on a scenic base the entry should be no larger than 300mm x150mm.

### 04. WARHAMMER 40,000 SINGLE MINIATURE

This category is for single Warhammer 40,000 miniatures on standard round slottabases size of 25mm. The category is predominately for a single freestanding approximately humanoid sized figure which comes on 25mm base. The only exception to this is those models wearing Terminator Armour or similar size (Ogryns, Ork Mega Armour, Tyrannic Warriors, Tau Battlesuits etc) which are provided with a 40mm slottabase - there are no other



# INFORMATION

## OPEN TO ALL AGES

### 01. SINGLE

1 to single  
es on standard  
20mm or 25mm

### 02. LARGE

1 to  
es on  
50mm,  
or 50X100mm  
all Warhammer  
ers and  
ridden  
Greater  
res, single

### 03.

ts of a  
dels from  
Battle. This  
Varhammer  
ase sizes:  
n, 25x50mm,  
r this category  
al unit entry  
ropriate army  
lude a  
musician, and a  
ilable to it. This  
lude a unit of  
ers cannot join  
a scenic base  
no larger than

### 04. 40,000

single  
miniatures on  
bases size of  
is  
single  
nately  
e which comes  
only exceptions  
is wearing  
r similar size  
armour, Tyrannid  
uits etc) which  
0mm  
e no other

exceptions. Conversions and constructs must be based on a 25mm base regardless of the original components. All other models on 40mm bases qualify for the Large model category.

### 05. WARHAMMER 40,000 LARGE MODEL

This category is open to a single Warhammer 40,000 miniature on slottabase sizes 40mm, 60mm, and 25x50mm. This category includes any single Warhammer 40,000 model that comes with a mounting base. This includes the Avatar, Demon Princes, Greater Daemons, Large Tyrannids, Dreadnoughts, Marine Bikes, Jetbikes, Warbikes and special characters such as the Judging Chair, Deceiver, Ghazghkull...

### 06. WARHAMMER 40,000 UNIT/SQUAD

This category consists of a collection of 5-20 Warhammer 40,000 models: This category is open to Warhammer 40,000 miniatures on slottabase sizes: 20mm, 25mm, 25x50mm, 40mm or 60mm. It must consist of a legal unit entry chosen from the appropriate Codex, Chapter Approved article or Imperial Armour army list. This category includes squads mounted on bikes, jetbikes and warbikes as described in the various Codices but not vehicle squadrons. All figures must be mounted on their appropriate bases.

If mounted on a scenic base the entry should be no larger than 300mm x150mm.

### 07. WARHAMMER 40,000 VEHICLE OR SQUADRON

This category is for any single large Warhammer 40,000 vehicle including tanks, or vehicle squadrons and Tau Battle Suit teams. (ForgeWorld Imperial Armour vehicles are also included in this category.) If mounted on a scenic base the entry should be no larger than 300mm x300mm and the entire entry should be not higher than 350mm.

### 08. WARHAMMER WAR MACHINE OR CHARIOT UNIT

This category is for Warhammer Fantasy Battle war machines with a complete game legal crew (where applicable) including, Ballistas, rock

lobbas, trebuchets or chariot units etc. If mounted on a scenic base the entry should be no larger than 300mm x300mm and the entire entry should be not higher than 350mm.

### 09. DUEL

This category consists of two single models mounted onto a single 50x50mm or 60mm round slottabase. The judges will be looking for a dynamic pairing of two opponents in some kind of combat or other dramatic situation. Models may be from the Warhammer or Warhammer 40,000 ranges.

For this category your entry must be no larger than 60mm round base.

### 10. THE LORD OF THE RINGS™ SINGLE MINIATURE

This category is open to any single the Lord of the Rings Strategy Battle Game™ range or scratch built miniatures on slottabase size up to 25mm

### 11. THE LORD OF THE RINGS™ LARGE MODEL OR GROUP

This category is open to any single the Lord of the Rings Strategy Battle Game™ range or scratch built miniatures on base size 40mm or larger for a single entry figure. For a group you must include a collection of nine figures on their appropriate base size or a Warmachine and it's full crew. If mounting the collection on a scenic base it should be no larger than 300mm x150mm.

### 12. YOUNG BLOODS: WARHAMMER 40,000 SINGLE MINIATURE

The young bloods painting competition is open to any competitor aged 14 years or under. Your entry should consist of any single Citadel miniature from the Warhammer 40,000 universe, on its standard 25mm or 40mm round slottabase if using a Terminator Armoured size model or similar (Ogryns, Ork Mega Armour, Tyrannid Warriors, Tau Battlesuits etc).. Scenic display bases are not allowed in this category.

### 13. YOUNG BLOODS: WARHAMMER SINGLE MINIATURE

The young bloods painting competition is open to any

competitor aged 14 years or under. Your entry should consist of any single Citadel miniature from the Warhammer universe, on its standard 20mm or 25mm slottabase. Scenic display bases are not allowed in this category.

### 14. YOUNG BLOODS: THE LORD OF THE RINGS™ SINGLE MINIATURE

The young bloods painting competition is open to any competitors aged 14 years or under. Your entry should consist of any single miniature from the Lord of the Rings Strategy Battle Game™ range, on its standard 25mm round slottabase. Scenic display bases are not allowed in this category.

### 15. OPEN

The Open Category is an opportunity to let your imagination run riot. Typically you'll enter the Open category with – Battle scenes, vignettes, Dioramas, Converted figures, both large and small, or scratch built work. Judges will be looking for entries that convey a strong image, theme or story that is a part of Games Workshop's gaming universes. To do this the entry will demonstrate a high level of modelling and/or converting, as well as a high level of painting skill. This should be the most demanding category to consider entering. It may not be enough to simply enter a single large model or group that hasn't been altered from the standard production. Entrants are also welcome to provide any details that support and explain the work they have put into creating their entry. This should be in a hard copy form and no more than 4 A4 pages – including all photos diagrams and text.

## Forge World

ForgeWorld will be offering a special award for the best ForgeWorld model in any category. To be eligible you will need to use ForgeWorld models or components in your entry but it must still comply to the categories normal guidelines.



## PAINTING FRENZY

You've been waiting all year to hear about this years Australian Games Day, and for many of you the Golden Demon painting awards are a very important part of Games Day.

Golden Demon is Australia's most prestigious miniature painting competition and this year it will draw entries from all over the Asia-Pacific region. There are fifteen categories this year (including the Open and Young Bloods categories) to challenge your painting and modelling skills, and an entry into any one of the first eleven categories may win you the coveted Golden Demon Slayer prize!

Here are a few tips to help you on your way.

- The most important hint is about your choice of miniatures. Don't choose a model purely because it's the latest release, or because it's from a fashionable army. Pick something which you really want to paint, regardless of whether its an old or new miniature. You will make a much better job of it if you have genuine

enthusiasm for the project rather than trying to please the judges.

- Don't neglect your bases. A good base, finished with a little care and attention, really sets off the model on it and enhances your chances of winning. Don't give in to the temptation to go overboard either.
- Try to concentrate on one or two categories. Focus on those areas you enjoy, eg. if you like detailing tanks then enter the Warhammer 40,000 Large Model category.
- When painting groups of multiple figures it is important they look coherent. Try to be consistent with colour schemes on groups of models. This will guarantee they are more visually striking than groups painted with two or more colour schemes.
- Also, when planning your Golden Demon miniature for this years competition remember that you have to transport it, nothing would be worse than arriving on the day with a broken miniature.

Well that's it for advice. Good luck everyone and get painting!

Games Day 2003  
Warhammer 40,000 Single  
Gold & Golden Demon  
Slayer Sword winner by  
Leigh Carpenter



## GAMESDAY & GOLDEN DEMON 2004

## OFFICIAL ENTRY FORM

**TICKET NUMBER:** .....

**NAME:** .....

**ADDRESS:** .....

**CITY:** .....

**STATE:** .....

**POSTCODE:** .....

**CONTACT NUMBER:** .....

**CATEGORY NAME:**

**CATEGORY NAME:**

**CATEGORY NAME:**

**CATEGORY NUMBER:**

**CATEGORY NUMBER:**

**CATEGORY NUMBER:**

**ENTRY NAME:**

**ENTRY NAME:**

**ENTRY NAME:**

**NUMBER OF MODELS:**

**NUMBER OF MODELS:**

**NUMBER OF MODELS:**

**OPEN CATEGORY ENTRY NAME:** .....

**ENTRY DESCRIPTION:** .....



# GAMESDAY & GOLDEN DEMON 2004

## THE TICKET DEALS!

Based on the success of last year's event we've decided to offer you the same cool ticket deals this year. They'll make it much easier for you to pick up a Games Day 2004 miniature and t-shirt.

Please note: We expect the t-shirts and miniatures to sell, out so get your tickets nice and early to avoid disappointment. You will not be able to purchase the miniature or t-shirt at Games Day 2004.

### DEAL ONE THE TICKET: Aus\$30

Deal One contains one Games Day Ticket (allowing multiple entries into the Games Day venue on Games Day) and a full colour Games Day Programme.

### DEAL TWO THE MINIATURE: Aus\$55

Deal Two includes the Ticket and Programme as described in Deal One plus the Archaon on foot Games Day 2004 miniature (pictured on this page). The miniature will be supplied to you when you purchase your ticket.

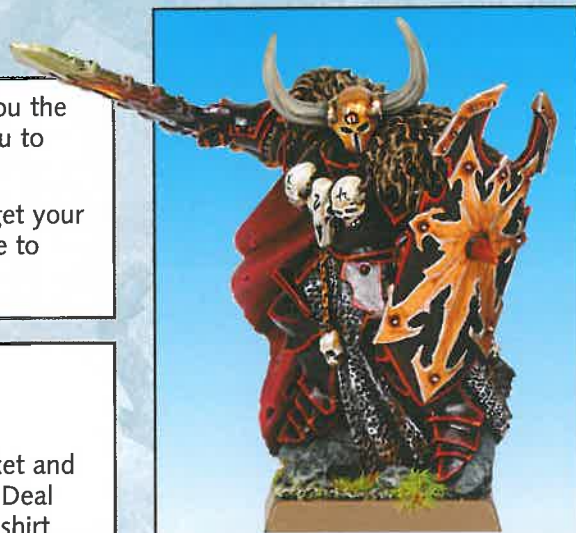
### DEAL THREE THE T-SHIRT: Aus\$55

Deal Three includes the ticket and Programme as described in Deal One plus the Games Day t-shirt (pictured on this page). The t-shirt will be supplied to you when you purchase your ticket.

### DEAL FOUR THE LOT: Aus\$75

Deal Four includes the ticket and Programme as described in Deal One plus the Archaon on foot Games Day 2004 miniature and the Games Day t-shirt. Both the t-shirt and miniature will be supplied to you when you purchase your ticket.

Coach Ticket deals may be available from your local Games Workshop stores. Ask staff for details.



Games Day 2004 Archaon on foot





# UNDER THE HOOD

BY ANDY HOAG

**Whether you're a new gamer, or a hardened veteran, the latest Warhammer 40,000 rulebook provides an ideal opportunity to reassess the tabletop game. Over the next few pages we take a peek beneath the hood of Warhammer 40,000, weigh up the game's fundamental principles, and answer many questions that players have been asking for as long as there have been games.**

Science fiction is as popular today as it has ever been – films, television programmes and books are filled with visions of tomorrow ranging from star-spanning Utopian societies to apocalyptic worlds in flames where even basic survival is a nasty, brutal and bloody business.

Unfortunately the nature of stories means that you can look but not touch, observe but not participate. Warhammer 40,000 allows players to interact directly with the universe in which their games are set, and this is why, two decades after computer games hit the mass market, wargaming is as popular, if not more popular, than it has ever been before.

The Warhammer 40,000 game enables you to fight conflicts between human and alien warriors on a tabletop battlefield. Opposing armies are represented by models, assembled and painted by yourself, representing the armed forces of your chosen race. Each race presents its own unique tactical challenges and provides different opportunities to hone

your modelling and painting skills. Warhammer is a 'total hobby' – it draws on many creative and intellectual skills, and each player brings a unique mix of these to the hobby.

The aim of every Warhammer 40,000 player is to fight battles against other players. Win or lose, all battles are entertaining challenges (for both players) in which you have to out-think and out-play your opponent, taking advantage of what good luck comes your way, but ultimately relying upon sound tactics to win the day. Collecting a battle-winning force and learning how to use it is something that any committed general can achieve with time and experience. From a small core of troops you can add new squads, gradually expanding your army as your generalship improves, until you are ready to play huge sweeping battles with countless troops and fighting machines on each side.

As well as collecting and painting armies, you can create battlefields on which to fight. Warhammer 40,000 is a very demanding game



*Ultramarines hold a breach against a force of the Lost and the Damned*



BY ANDY HO

ing skills. Warhammer 40,000 is a hobby where each player brings their own army to the table. The game is played on a tabletop, and each player brings their own army to the table. The game is played on a tabletop, and each player brings their own army to the table. The game is played on a tabletop, and each player brings their own army to the table.

where your skills and imagination are at least as important as the rulebook. Amongst Warhammer 40,000 players are many dedicated collectors, accomplished artists, and gaming tabletop generals, as well as players who enjoy the opportunity to get together with a group of friends for an evening's battle.

Warhammer 40,000 caters for a range of playing styles, and there are many ways in which the game can be played. By far the most popular way of playing Warhammer 40,000 is for two players to each turn up with a 1,500 point army, roll a dice to see which Standard Mission is to be played, set up terrain in an even-handed manner, and then get to it. This approach has the major advantage that games can be arranged on the fly with little or no planning required before hand. Many such 'pick up' games take place in Games Workshop's hobby centres, as well as in many independent stores and clubs. Many players find the challenge of collecting a 'standard' army that can meet all comers highly rewarding, and it certainly is a sign of a skillful general that his army has an equally good record against all-out assault forces as it does against firepower-heavy armies.

Many players are part of a gaming group – a group of like-minded individuals who meet regularly and face each other's armies across the tabletop time and again. Amongst these groups certain styles of play come to the fore, and many like to establish house rules that cover unusual gaming situations they have encountered or additional rules they find enjoyable. Furthermore, through facing the same opponents on a regular basis, narratives and ongoing rivalries develop, something that rarely happens in one-off games.

A major advantage of gaming in these tight-knit groups is that players can explore aspects of the Warhammer 40,000 game they would never find the opportunity to pursue during pick-up games, whether this is creating unique scenarios, campaigns or even inventing entirely new ways of playing the game.

Other players enjoy the challenge and spectacle of tournaments – organised gaming events that pit strictly formulated armies against one another until one player is declared the overall winner. Such events reward players who are quite exceptional tacticians, and the better tournaments also offer trophies for the best-painted army, the best general and, perhaps most importantly, the most sporting opponent.

## GAME SCALES

Warhammer 40,000 has a miniatures scale of approximately 1 inch = 3 feet, making the average 40mm human 6' tall in scale. The ground and time scale is more elastic, effectively telescoping out at long ranges and compressing at short range. For example a range of 24" would be ridiculously short even for the most primitive firearm if you go with the miniature scale. On the ground scale, however, it equates to 3-400 metres at 24",

## GAMING CLUBS

Gaming is a sociable hobby and you will not be surprised to hear that there are many clubs that cater for gamers of all ages and tastes. If you live in a large city, you'll find there is a local games club where Games Workshop games are played. You don't need to be part of a club to enjoy gaming, but there are plenty of advantages to doing so, and it is nice to meet people who share your own passion for gaming.

One of the great things about clubs is there's always someone willing to show you how to play a particular game or help improve your painting or modelling skills. In particular, clubs always seem to harbour at least one expert scenery maker who will only be too happy to rope you in to whatever huge and ambitious project he happens to be working on. Many clubs also participate in bigger public events, putting on demonstration games or displays and helping to explain about the games and models.

Clubs come in all shapes and sizes. Actually, three or more hobbyists who meet regularly to enjoy a game count as a club. If there isn't a club near you why not consider starting your own? All you need is a group of like-minded friends and a place to meet. From humble beginnings many a large gaming club has grown.



shrinking to perhaps 50-100 metres when within 12", but on the other hand a 48" range equates to more like 2 kilometres.

Another way to look at weapons ranges is to think of them as the range at which your warriors are trained to fire, and can reasonably expect to score a hit. Sure, a lasgun would be able to fire several hundred metres before its energy dissipated to a non-lethal level, but with less chance of harming anything. The Guardsmen firing them are trained to only engage enemies as they close, thus conserving valuable ammunition and maintaining fire discipline.

The reason the game uses the ground scale it does is that it works well on the tabletop, enabling large numbers of men, machines and monsters to fight in a reasonable area without everyone being able to hit anything, anywhere on the table. Likewise, a turn of action for a unit at long range typically represents up to half an hour of real time spent receiving orders, scouting the immediate ground, looking for the enemy, manoeuvring into position and firing a few well-aimed shots with an eye to conserving ammunition. At close quarters only a few minutes will pass as a unit leaps from its

## GAMES WORKSHOP STORES

One of the best places to learn more about the game is at your local Games Workshop store. Not only can you find Warhammer 40,000 miniatures and vehicles there, our stores are staffed by experienced gamers who can advise you if you have any questions or wish to take part in an introductory game as well.

Our stores are also excellent places to meet other gamers. As most will have played other Games Workshop games they're a good starting point if you're new to gaming. If there isn't a Games Workshop near you, don't worry. Warhammer 40,000 miniatures and books are also available from many independent hobby retailers across the world.





## TOURNAMENTS

One of the high profile parts of the Warhammer 40,000 hobby are the tournaments that take place all over the world at some point in the annual calendar. Across the region there are, countless gaming competitions run not only by our own staff but by other enthusiasts and fans of the game. In short, tournaments are about testing your mettle against others to see who is the most skillful tabletop general; they also encourage you to show off your painted army and allow you to meet other fanatical commanders through the act of gaming. Tournaments are not for the faint hearted, but they are open to all with the tenacity and desire to conquer – in a friendly environment of course.



position and pounds forward to assault an opponent, blazing away madly as it does so.

## D6 MECHANICS

Warhammer 40,000 has come to rely on the humble D6 for nearly everything, for several reasons. The first is that six-sided dice are cheap and easy to acquire in numbers, unlike specialist multi-siders. The game uses the patented 'buckets of dice' mechanics because rolling a lot of dice tends to iron out the quirks of luck over the course of the game (though not entirely!). Other games that use opposed dice rolls or factors with a randomiser are often far more random in outcome.

## COMBAT MODEL

The Warhammer 40,000 battlefield is a science fantasy one that draws its ideas from 19th to mid-20th century warfare and mixes them with high-tech 'super-science' elements. It is not a modern/high-tech setting as such – although some alien races like Tau and Eldar are more orientated in that direction, and this has allowed the creation of a universe where everything from barbarians to grav tanks can fight on the same battlefield.

## TACTICAL PRECEPTS

In keeping with the combat model the game is pitched at a level where firepower is potentially lethal but manoeuvring and combined arms tactics is what decides the battle. Whether it be massed infantry, mobile riders, elite shock troops or flame belching ironclads each unit has its own balance of firepower, close combat ability, speed and endurance to contribute. The most successful generals are those who play to their strengths while striking at their opponent's weaknesses. For example massed infantry have formidable staying power coupled with (usually) plenty of ranged capability. However, their speed and close combat ability are generally poor so

they are vulnerable to specialised close combat units and better on the defensive than the attack. Hence if you have a lot of massed infantry, you should try and draw it up in a defensive line or clump for mutual support and pound anything that comes within range. But then what do you do if the enemy goes around your position? Or if you need to attack and seize an objective? Or if they come en masse with numbers too great to stop? These tactical dilemmas (and many more) are part of the game, no one solution is ever 100% guaranteed to succeed.

## THE TURN SYSTEM

Warhammer 40,000 uses a turn system often referred to as 'I go, you go', whereby one player performs all of the actions for his army, before the other player does the same with his. Alternatively, some games use a system called an 'integrated turn sequence', in which the players take turns to perform actions with individual units.

Both approaches are equally valid, and the decision to use the 'I go, you go' system, and indeed, to stay with it through the various revisions of Warhammer 40,000, has been made to keep the game fun, yet challenging, and it is necessary to keep the game playable using company-sized armies, within a couple of hours. Many veteran players have

experimented with Warhammer 40,000 in sequence, and many have found that an integrated sequence works well for them, though be warned, you might need to play low-points games and avoid very tough ones. This sort of experimentation is to be encouraged, it's your game after all!

## MASS COMBAT

The rules for Warhammer 40,000 generally assume that a unit's actions are all enacted once – for example, a squad of ten Imperial Guardsmen firing all of their weapons at a mob of Orks will all roll its dice at once and pick out the ones that hit. This principle is to enforce the point that Warhammer 40,000 is a game of units. Generally speaking, squads, heroes and vehicles are each equivalent in terms of power and importance in the game. This enables the game to focus on the actions of a company's worth of warriors – if the actions of each individual warrior were emphasised the game would need to focus on far fewer units, or soon become bogged down in unnecessary detail.

## A POINT OF ORDER

Every model in a Warhammer 40,000 army is assigned a points value – a number that determines how effective the warrior is on the tabletop when compared to other troops. The better a warrior is, the more points he costs. A model carries particularly potent weapons wears armour then its points value is increased further.

Players decide before the game that they will each field an army of a set total points value, 1,500 points per side being the most common value, and the 'default' for which Warhammer 40,000 is designed. Games as small as 400 points per side are quite possible though, and will generally take less than an hour to conclude, whereas battles over 3,000 points can be played if the players are willing to set aside the best part of a day.

Thanks to points values, players can play very different armies against one another, secure in the knowledge that they each have an equal chance of victory. For example, a Space Marine army may consist of only 300 points, 40 Space Marines and a handful of fearsome armoured vehicles, as each warrior is a very good all-round fighter and so has a high points value. An Ork army by contrast may feature a hundred Orks and a motley mass

## GAMES DAYS

Each year Games Workshop hosts a series of Games Day events across the globe to showcase the whole of the hobby: not only Warhammer 40,000 but all our other games, miniatures and cool stuff too. Each event is unique, reflecting the style and scope of the hobby in the country that hosts it, always promising a variety of scenarios to try, terrain and models to marvel at, and new ideas to explore.





Warhammer 40,000's...  
found that an...  
s well for them...  
might need to play...  
did very tough...  
on is to be...  
ie after all!

Warhammer 40,000 generally...  
ns are all enacted...  
ad of ten Imperial...  
eir weapons at a...  
s dice at once and...  
This principle...  
Warhammer 40,000...  
r speaking, squads...  
ach equivalent in...  
tance in the game...  
focus on the action...  
warriors – if the...  
warrior were over...  
uld need to focus...  
become bogged down

Warhammer 40,000 army...  
a number that...  
the warrior is on...  
o other troops. The...  
re points he costs...  
y potent weapons...  
nts value is

the game that the...  
a set total points...  
le being the most...  
efault' for which...  
signed. Games...  
de are quite possi...  
take less than an...  
s battles over 3,000...  
players are willing...  
of a day.

es. players can pl...  
ist one another...  
at they each have...  
. For example, a...  
onsist of only 30...  
andful of fearsome...  
h warrior is a very...  
so has a high...  
by contrast may...  
d a motley mass



*Plague Marines of the Death Guard attack the Imperial Guard lines from behind*

armchuckle vehicles – though tough and brutal warriors in close combat, Orks have weak armour and are very poor shots indeed, meaning that they cost around half the points of a Space Marine.

Points values in Warhammer 40,000 are not generated using any kind of formula, they are created by comparing existing unit points and abilities. The simple fact is that formulas

## CAMPAIGNS

Competition is not for everyone. With this in mind, it's also possible to take part in a variety of events that are all about creating a cool story through the gaming antics of a group of players. Many of these are organised as weekend or one-day events by clubs, our staff, or independent trackists. Yet, it doesn't stop there: campaigns sometimes grow into enormous affairs, and sometimes even boil over to engulf the entire globe, such as with the Eye of Terror Campaign that took place in 2003. Whatever your interest you are going to be able to find people to band together with, to create your own campaigns and exciting adventures on the battlefields of the 41st millennium. We reckon that you'll find something to broaden even the most veteran's experience of the game and all enjoy – Warhammer 40,000.

break when applied to very complex situations, and the true value of a unit can be totally variable depending on mission, opposition and conditions. For example the points for unit upgrades like heavy weapons and leaders is based on the army fighting style, Ballistic Skill, and the number of upgrades permitted. A unit with multiple heavy weapons, for example, will pay a higher points cost for each of them than a unit with just one. It will almost invariably be placed at long range on a prominent terrain piece and use its firepower, gaining more value from the weapons. Units with one heavy weapon are far more likely to miss chances to fire, as they move around to bring other weapons to bear.

So, when a new unit is created it has a points value applied to it; it is tested by playing some games, the value and/or rules are adjusted and then it is tried again (and again). The unit is then handed on to play-testers who play lots more games with it, and the unit is adjusted even more. Eventually a value is reached that most people are happy with (it's rare for everyone to agree completely) and the unit is published.

This kind of holistic approach ensures that points values are a fair reflection of the abilities of the unit, although battlefield conditions, pure luck and other factors mean it may do better or worse than expected in any particular game. So if you're making up points values of your own, use the same Guess-Fight-Adjust technique.

## GAMING EVENTS

Gaming events are all about, well... showing off the hobby. Organised both by Games Workshop and other groups of hobbyists, including some clubs or independent retailers, these events are always a popular addition to many people's Warhammer 40,000 experience. Most commonly, shows are all about seeing some cool games, chatting to new people, and hopefully picking up the odd new model or tip that can make a difference to your own hobby.

## SAVING IT 'TIL LAST

Finally, one question players often ask is: 'Why are Saving throws rolled after rolling to wound, rather than before?' There are several reasons, but the most important is one of player interaction – the game is more fun if the player who owns a model has the final say over its fate, which is why the roll is called a 'save'.

## GO PLAY

So there you have it – the next time you play Warhammer 40,000 you might like to ponder a few of these principles. Having digested them, feel free to experiment by tweaking the rules as you and your gaming group desire. At the end of the day, Warhammer 40,000 is a game, and a game is a contract between two people to have fun.



# ECHOES FROM THE WARP

RETURN OF THE HORDE BY STEVE CUMISKE



Adi's mighty Orks prepare to make light work of Steve's Helion Legion.

**M**y first moment of glory was quite brief, as these things often are. The steady advance of my Tactical squad swept into the rubble-strewn square and, with a solid wall of flame and bolts, cleared a mob of Orks from the barricades. I was feeling pretty good at that point. Then the survivors mobbed up with another gang of Orks in a back street, came back and did the same to me – only more thoroughly. Still, it's the first battle my troops have seen since I started to

rebuild my Space Marines, so I'm not too disappointed. Of course, I'm not alone in being inspired to rebuild an old army, now that we have a revised set of rules to play with. My opponent in that first game, Adrian Wood, is one of them. Anyone who's been reading *White Dwarf* for as long as I have, won't be surprised to see him fielding an Ork army. For a lot of players, he's managed to become inextricably linked to the green hordes. What might come as more of a

surprise is the fact that his Orks had become somewhat neglected of late and, as with any army that's been slowly growing for a very long time, it had actually ceased to look like an army.

How did Adi become so strongly identified with our green friends, and when does an army stop being an army? Before we can begin to find an answer to either of these questions, it's time for a quick history lesson...

## The changing faces of Adrian Wood:

1. Young and innocent.
2. Older and wiser.
3. Now.
4. Adi's evolutionary path.





It wasn't until the days of the second edition of Warhammer 40,000 that most of the races we know and love really began to develop into full armies. At this stage the Orks were dominated by the idea of the Klangs. Each Klan had both a very strong identity and a vibrant colour scheme to go with it. Many of the troop types in the Ork army became strongly identified with particular Klangs – Kommandos with the Blood Axes, or Lootas with the Death Skulls. The result of all of this meant that any Ork army at the time was made up of elements of various Klangs, and looked like a riot of wildly clashing colours. Most importantly, it never really looked like any of these units were part of a single army.

Things began to change towards the end of the second edition when a game called Gorkamorka was released. The game

revolved around gangs of Orks in cobbled together Trukks, tearing across a desert world looking for valuable pieces of scrap. And hitting things. It was the first time that the idea of Ork vehicles as moving piles of scrap appeared, and it was also the first time that I began to associate Adi with the Orks. It came about when he got hold of some of the models made for the game, abandoned his old, bright army and started a whole new one. The new army was everything the old one wasn't – it was dirty while the old one was clean, clothed in a uniform of dark rags while the old one was brightly coloured, and it had scrap vehicles.

His scratch-built Dreadnought in particular summed up what most people now think of when you mention Orks. By the time the third edition of Warhammer 40,000 had arrived the army had gone through a

slight change – more red had crept into the paint scheme for one thing, but it was still fundamentally a coherent force.

That was followed by a long list of changes, from the arrival of the current plastic Orks to the mutant Ork adversaries in the Daemonhunters codex. Along the way, Adi made a series of experiments in Ork skin colour, uniforms and basing until things reached the stage where there were barely two mobs in the army that looked anything like each other. So when is an army not an army? When it loses the common elements that tie a force together, from a common basing technique to a shared colour palette or iconography. It was something as simple as wanting to add a new mob to the army during the development of the new Warhammer 40,000 rulebook that prompted Adi to reunite his Orks.







*The horde travel onwards with merciless force.*

## BEGINNING AGAIN

**Adi:** I'd had Flash Gitz recommended to me by some other Ork players that I knew, but had never really gotten around to making any. With all of the activity around putting the new Warhammer 40,000 book together, I began to feel that the time was right to get my army going again, with the Gitz as the first mob. While my army had become somewhat disorganised, it wouldn't be true to say that I'd abandoned them. I was always tinkering around with a few Orks, looking for

a colour scheme that grabbed me enough to make me want to paint a whole army again. With the Flash Gitz, I managed to find it. Something that had been bothering me for a while was the black clothing that I'd been using. While it suited the character of the Orks, it always ended up looking a little like I hadn't bothered to finish painting it. I decided to break away from the black outfits and try more natural brown or tan colours. By varying the shades that I used, I was able to create a satisfying range of colours in a mob.

This gave the Orks in each mob the uniqueness that I wanted them to have, without losing their group identity. Once I'd gotten a balance of colour that I was happy with, I quickly moved on to repainting a mob of Slugga Boyz and building a new mob of Shoota Boyz. Of course, Ork armies being what they are, I would need a lot more than three mobs to field a suitably impressive horde.

## BUILDING THE HORDE

Actually building the models has always been the part of collecting an army that I most enjoy. The plastic kits are full of variety and character, with plenty of bits that can be swapped between models to make each one an individual. I tend to start by building the basic models, some with slight conversions to the parts, and then return to each one individually and make a few more minor alterations. I don't tend to use any Green Stuff for these conversions. Instead I just rely on using accessories to cover any gaps I might create.

## FLASH GITZ

Given that the Flash Gitz are a mob defined by their love of expensive customised weapons, I decided to build the guns first and then make the Orks to carry them. Most of them are simply parts of two guns glued together, with wire wound round or bulked up with armour plates.





## PAINTING AN ORK HORDE

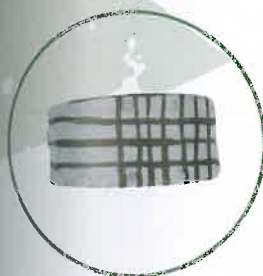
**Adi:** The first thing to remember when painting Orks is that you're going to be painting a lot of them, so it's best to keep things simple. The first step is to paint the base colours onto an entire mob. I drybrush the weapons and armour with Tin Blue, followed by Boltgun Metal and Chainmail – drybrushing can get a bit messy, it's easier to clean up if you do it first. I paint the skin in two layers – Snot Green, followed by Goblin Green. The clothing has only a single layer of Scorched Brown on the trousers and Snakebite Leather on the tunic.

### CHECK PATTERN

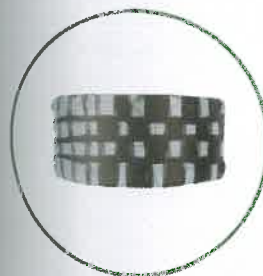
I use a check pattern for extra detail to armour and weapons of random Orks. On the Flash Gitz, I used this for every model.



**1** Paint the entire area in an even coat of Fortress Grey.



**2** With watered down Chaos Black paint, I create a grid. On curved surfaces, get an even line by holding the brush still and rotating the model.



**3** With the grid in place, I just fill in alternate squares to finish off.

From here it's a matter of filling in extra details, painting the gloves and pouches in Snakebite Leather covered with a Brown Ink wash, and the glyphs with a basecoat of Bleached Bone followed with Blood Red. With the basic colours in place, I take each Ork and select a colour for the tunic and trousers from the small palette that I've chosen.

**Steve:** With these changes in place and a consistent basing style across the troops, it wasn't long before Adi had assembled the force that confronted my Space Marines in the streets of an anonymous city. In fact, while I

consider myself to be a reasonably fast painter, he had managed to repaint four full-sized Mobs in the time it had taken me to do two squads of Space Marines and their transports. While that rapid build-up of models owes a lot to the fact that in many cases he was simply repainting models that were already in one piece, it's hard to deny the motivating power of seeing a coherent army coming together.



### ORK TEETH

It's vital to get Ork teeth right. It may seem easier to overbrush them with Bleached Bone, but this can cause the gaps between them to clog with paint. I paint each tooth individually.



**1** I paint the mouth in Scorched Brown. This provides a warm basecoat, and helps to make the individual teeth easier to see.



**2** Next, I paint each tooth with Bleached Bone.



**3** Finally, I finish off the tips of the more prominent teeth with a mix of Bleached Bone and Skull White.

### FOR THE LEGS



Base Colour (Scorched Brown)



Bestial Brown



Snakebite Leather



Vermin Brown



Terracotta

### FOR THE TUNIC



Base Colour (Snakebite Leather)



Kommando Khaki



Bleached Bone



Vomit Brown



Bubonic Brown



# THE IMPERIUM OF MAN

BY GRAHAM MCNEILL

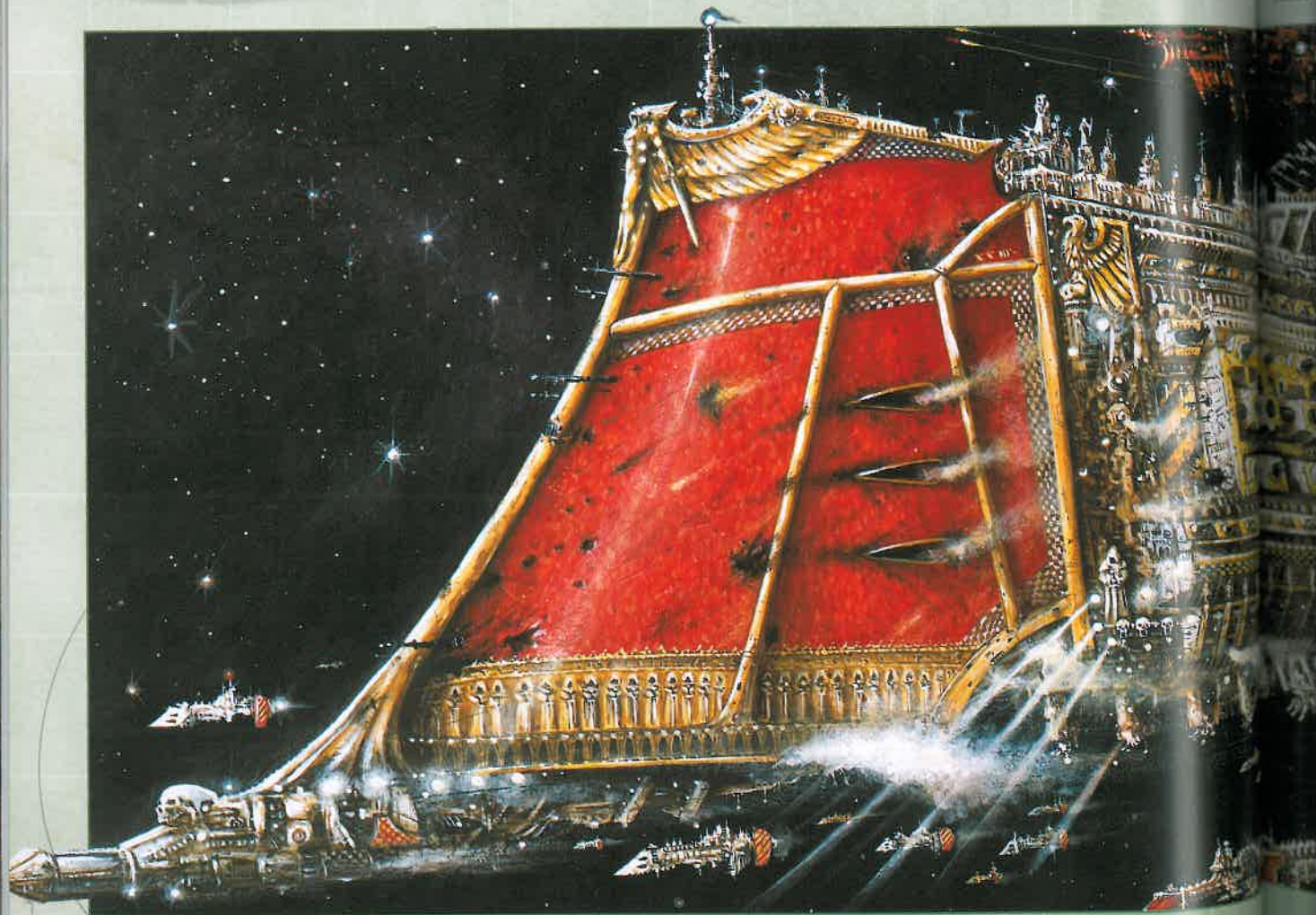
**The Imperium of Man spans the entire galaxy. Here, Graham McNeill reveals the sheer scale of the Emperor's realm, the multifarious enemies that assault it and the heroic warriors that defend it.**

For ten thousand years, the Immortal Emperor has sat immobile on the Golden Throne, master of Mankind by the will of the gods and ruler of an Imperium of a million worlds by the might of his inexhaustible armies. Worshipped by untold billions as a god, the sorrow and sacrifices made to sustain his divine corpse ensure the continued survival of the Imperium. The Emperor's realm is the

greatest stellar empire the galaxy has ever seen, stretching from holy Terra to the furthest reaches of the Eastern Fringe and the distant Halo Stars. Entire armies of scribes attempt to collate how many humans inhabit the Imperium, but such a task is hopeless and without end, as the Emperor's realm encompasses every kind of world imaginable; sweltering jungle hells populated by club-wielding savages, ice-locked tundra with cities carved from glaciers, blisteringly-hot desert worlds, polluted industrial forge worlds, teeming worlds of unknown billions living in gargantuan hive cities and giant Cardinal planets where every building is given over to the worship of the Emperor. Such diversity of worlds breeds vastly varied, distinct cultures and humans from one world are likely to be completely different from one another, with different argots, customs and appearance.

## THE CRADLE OF MANKIND

Terra itself is a sprawling hive world, its surface utterly barren and covered with dark, towering spires of iron, colossal, gothic cathedrals, ancient ruins and masses of pilgrims come to the cradle of Mankind in homage to the God-Emperor. Its oceans have long since boiled away, and beneath the countless layers of metal and stone that have built up over the aeons, Terra is a lifeless wasteland of rock. Hissing, verdigris-stained gargoyles vent steam into the polluted atmosphere and crumbling statues of angels stare blindly down on the teeming populace who mindlessly shuffle through the grinding business of simple existence. The object of these pilgrims' quest, the gothic majesty of the Imperial Palace, is a sight most will never see, having spent the majority of their life journeying to Terra only to be crushed by the mind-numbing





...of the queues of their fellow pilgrims.  
 ...even to tread the sacred surface of Terra is  
 ...honour most citizens of the Imperium can  
 ...only dream of.

Far from the congested queues of pilgrims,  
 ...million serried ranks of scribes and  
 ...mechanics of the Adeptus Terra toil in the  
 ...scriptoria, locked in enormous, candle-lit  
 ...scriptoria, gathering numbers and records of a  
 ...thousand years ago, whose purpose and  
 ...meaning has long been forgotten. Billions of  
 ...make up their ranks, from the lowly  
 ...scribener who fills the inkwells of the scriptoria  
 ...to the High Lords themselves. Like any huge  
 ...bureaucracy, the Imperium is split into separate  
 ...divisions, each a gargantuan organisation in its  
 ...own right, and each with its own customs,  
 ...practices and secrets. Every facet of Imperial  
 ...life is, in theory, governed by these  
 ...organisations, from planetary tithes, religion  
 ...and military crusades. From the tiniest detail to  
 ...decisions that affect entire star systems, the  
 ...Imperium has an organisation whose entire  
 ...existence is dedicated to it. Archives the size of  
 ...continents sprawl deep underground in gloomy  
 ...mazes, their floors dusty with antiquity and  
 ...glistening through stacks of parchments, scrolls  
 ...and data crystals that, in all likelihood, no one  
 ...will ever read. Without insight or even the will  
 ...to question what they do, they persevere  
 ...through the same repetitive tasks every day  
 ...because that is, was and ever shall be, their lot.

These scribes form part of the monolithic organisations known as the Administratum, a bloated, self-sustaining bureaucracy of petty functionaries and more senior ranking officials. All manner of widely differing Adepts make up the Administratum, but highest and mightiest of all are the High Lords of Terra, the supreme council of twelve of the most powerful men in the galaxy who rule the galaxy in the name of the Emperor. It is they who interpret the will of the Emperor, despatching his fleets across the galaxy and sending his armies to war. Their orders are passed to one of the five Segmentum commanders before reaching the sector and sub-sector lords. Thus do the Imperial Commanders of each world receive their orders and thus is the will of the Emperor enacted.

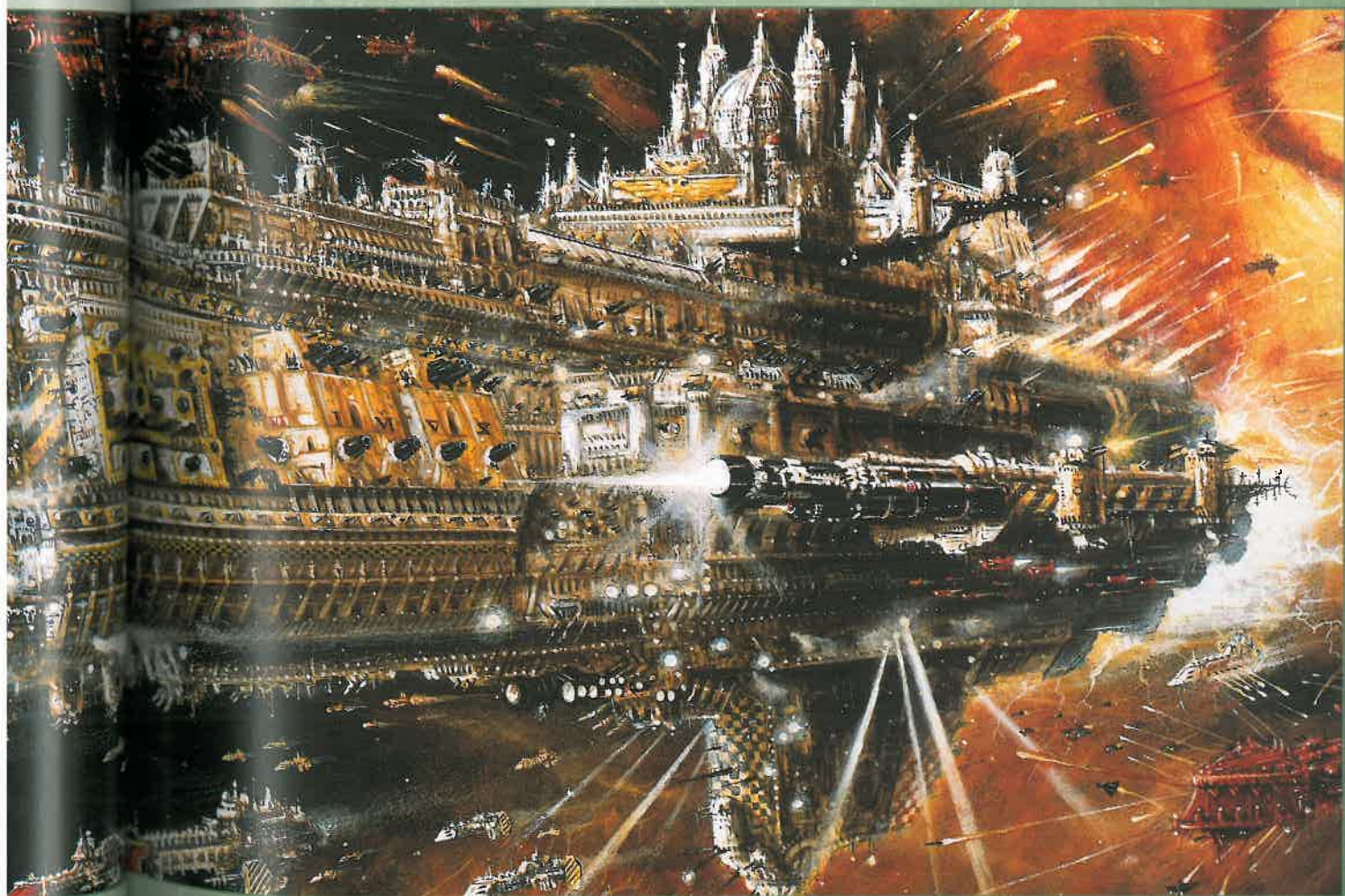
Also on Terra is the Hall of the Astronomicon, where the psychic beacon utilised by the ships of the Imperial Navy to cross the vast gulfs of space is generated by thousands of psykers of the Adeptus Astronomica. Working in close conjunction with the Adeptus Astronomica are the psykers of the Adeptus Astra Telepathica, specially trained Astrotelepaths who can utilise their mysterious powers to communicate with others of their kind across the vast interstellar distances that separate the worlds of the Imperium. These psykers are not the only ones required to make the ultimate sacrifice, for the

Emperor is no normal man and cannot take sustenance as one. Only the spiritual energies of those with psychic powers may sustain his immortal existence and though hundreds must die every day to nourish him, the preachers of the Ministorum teach that this is a small price to pay and those that must pay it do so gladly.

## TO RULE THE STARS

The Emperor's realm is so vast as to defy comprehension by mortal minds, with distances so enormous that they require centuries or even millennia to traverse. Under normal circumstances, such unimaginable gulfs would make a mockery of any attempt to establish a galactic-wide empire, but there exists a way to make such journeys without them taking centuries. The Warp, or Immaterium as it is sometimes known, is an alternate dimension existing beyond the veil of reality that is a dark mirror of the material realm. It is a roiling sea of chaos, raw emotion and madness given form, where the laws of physics, time and nature are meaningless concepts and nothing is as it seems.

Starships equipped with Warp engines are able to breach the invisible walls that separate the material realm and the Immaterium and traverse its hazardous expanse. A journey that might normally take centuries can be completed in a matter of months. Shielded from the destructive wrath of the Warp by the





protective energies of a Gellar Field, ships enter the Immaterium and use the guiding light of the Astronomican to plot a course through the swirling maelstrom. In order to travel through the Warp, ships must have a Navigator, strange psykers that have the power to see beyond the pitiful senses of most mortals. With the Astronomican as a reference point in the material universe, they enter a trance-like state and are able to chart the ship's journey with a greater degree of accuracy than would normally be possible. They can see the tides and currents of the Immaterium, guiding a ship through the Warp's treacherous currents and eddies that carry a vessel towards its destination.

The vast distances and delays in communication between worlds makes a mockery of any meaningful central control. The breakdown of communication between worlds often results in some falling into anarchy through simply being forgotten and slipping through the cracks of the Imperial bureaucracy. A plea for aid may come to the ears of the Imperium, but not be acted upon for centuries while the request makes its way through countless Adepts before finally reaching the hands of one who can sanction such action. Indeed, it is not uncommon for fleets and armies to arrive at a warzone to find that the war they were despatched to wage has long since ended.

The sheer scale of such a massive empire means that no method of control can ever be foolproof and as well as worlds that fall into disorder through neglect, there are some that wilfully defy the will of the Emperor, seeking to further their own ends. Traitors and malcontents, recklessly believing that they do not owe their continued survival to the Emperor, cast aside their oaths of loyalty and

claim their worlds for themselves. Where ultimate authority is many light years distant, such subversion and insurrection is an ever-present danger, but the armies of the Imperium are swift to ruthlessly crush these heretical actions can spread further. There can be no mercy for such traitors, and only by such ruthless, oppressive measures can the

The western sky burned with a rippling orange glow as the sun descended to the horizon, sending blinding light streaming down the length of the valley. From his vantage point on the edge of the cliff above the valley floor, a lone Space Marine scouted his prey. Ansgar Heroth, Wolf Priest of the Space Wolves, watched the Ork gunners on the crudely constructed wall below shield their eyes against the low sun and knew that the time had come to launch their attack. His fellow Space Wolves would be roaring up the valley soon in their armoured transports and were relying on his warriors to knock out the Ork heavy guns that protected the Ork encampment.

He crawled back to where the Blood Claws awaited him, pleased to see the fierce hunger for battle in every one of the young Space Marines. One look at them told him they needed no rousing speech or fiery oratory. Instead he simply said, 'It's time,' and scrambled back to the edge of the cliff.

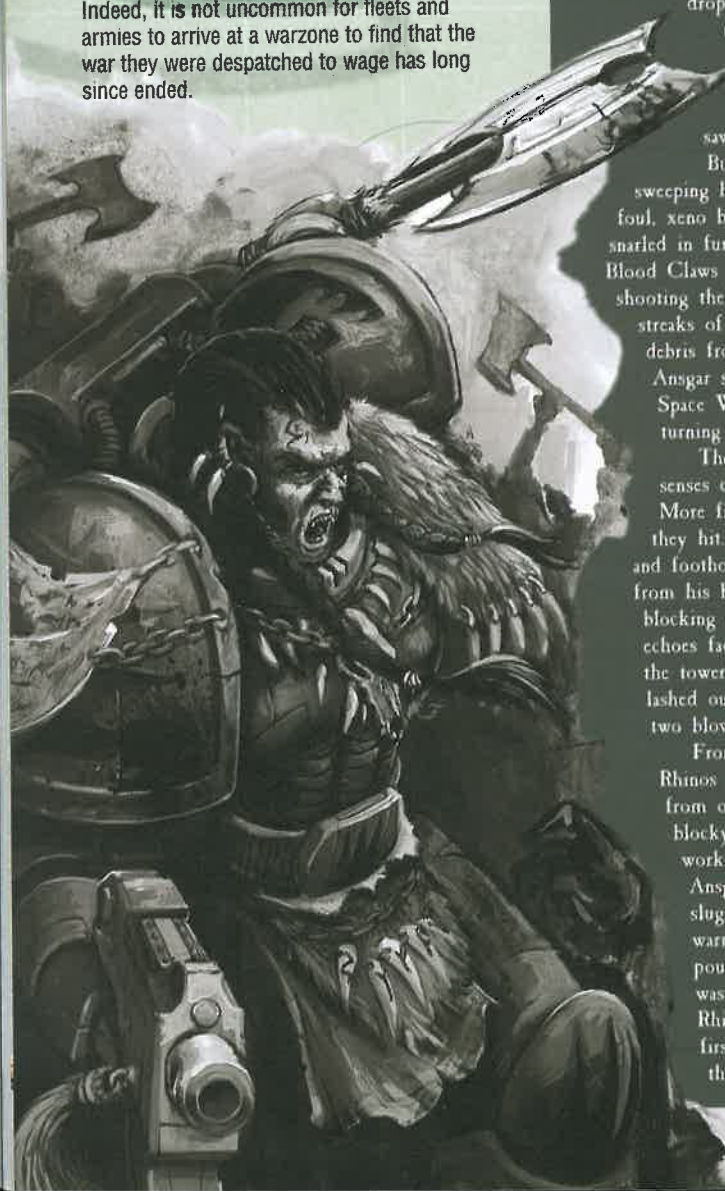
The Blood Claws followed him; their movements fluid and practiced despite the rockiness of the terrain and Ansgar knew they would not let him down. He drew his wolf-headed axe, a grey-tailed totem dangling from its haft and, with a curt nod to the Blood Claws, leapt from the edge of the cliff. The ululating howls of the Blood Claws followed him as he dropped from high above to land with a bone-crashing impact upon an unsuspecting Ork sentry, the alien dying without knowing what had killed him.

The force of Ansgar's landing cracked the iron sheeting of the rampart and he felt the poorly built structure threaten to give way beneath him. Orks bellowed in challenge as they rushed to meet him, swinging huge saw-toothed cleavers and blazing away with crude firearms.

Bullets burst around Ansgar, but he dived forward, rolling to his feet and sweeping his axe in a wide arc that clove through the chest armour of a firing Ork. A foul, xeno blood splashed his armour as he kicked the beast from his blade, and he snarled in fury, begging the armour's forgiveness for such a desecration. The howls of his Blood Claws echoed from the valley sides as they killed the Orks, slashing, hacking and shooting their foes from the wall with a ferocity that made him proud. Without warning, streaks of fire ripped through the air from a nearby gun tower, blasting metal and debris from the walls as Ork gunners turned their unwieldy weapons on their attackers. Ansgar saw Grimmel hit, his power armour torn apart by the heavy shells and precious Space Wolf blood spilling onto the ground as he fell. Ansgar howled in anger, turning towards the tower, and calling for his brethren to follow him.

The Blood Claws cut a bloody path towards him as Ansgar's highly attuned senses caught the distant rumble of Rhino engines approaching. They must be quick. More fire from the tower tore across the wall, the Orks uncaring of who or what they hit. Ansgar leapt for the tower, its crude construction offering a wealth of handholds. He swiftly reached the edge of the tower's parapet and unclipped a frag from his belt. Leaning outwards, he lobbed the grenade upwards, his armour's auto sensor blocking out the violence of the resulting explosion and burst of flame. Barely had the echoes faded when the howling Wolf Priest swung himself over the parapet and onto the tower's top. The Ork gunners were stunned, but, incredibly, still alive, so Ansgar lashed out, beheading the first and cleaving the other from collarbone to pelvis with two blows from his axe.

From high in the tower he could see the armoured column of Space Wolves Rhinos approaching. Ork rockets spearing out towards them on blazing tail plumes from other towers. Though his lip curled in distaste over his fangs, he gripped the blocky handles of the Ork gun and swung it around, pulling the heavy trigger and working the gun's fire over the tower nearest him. The weapon bucked madly, but Ansgar's strength held it firm and the tower top disappeared in a hail of explosive slugs. He destroyed three more towers with the Ork gun before rejoining his warriors as they slaughtered the last Orks on the wall. More Greenskins were pouring from the encampment behind them, but Ansgar already knew the battle was won. Grey Hunters and Long Fangs were already disembarking from their Rhinos and he felt great pride that his warriors had succeeded, that they had been first into battle and prevailed so mightily. It would be a fine tale to tell around the feast tables of the Fang.





selves. Where light years distant, reaction is an ever-ones of the essly crush these tigators before the d further. There are, and only by measures can the

to the horizon, vantage-point on prey. Angar crudely constructed come to launch in their armoured s that protected

the fierce hunger him they needed ambled back to

pite the rockiness wolf-headed and a Claws, leapt from followed him as he upon an what had killed a ing of the rampart, way beneath him, swinging huge

his feet and of a firing Ork blade, and he The howls of ho ing, hacking and Without warning ing metal and s on their attacks shells and preas eld in anger. him.

highly attuned ey must be quick of who or what a wealth of hand d unclipped a frag armour's auto sense me. Barely had the parapet and onto alive, so Angar ne to pelvis with

Space Wolves azing tail plumes gs, he gripped the e heavy trigger and bucked madly, but a hail of explosio re rejoining his Greenskins were y knew the battle king from their, that they had bee tale to tell around

Imperium hope to survive; only by such drastic, unbending rules can Humanity defeat the myriad foes arrayed against it.

## THE ENEMIES OF MANKIND

Further from Terra, there are vast expanses of wilderness space, where Imperial law is all but ignored and beyond the Emperor's Light, out towards the far-flung regions of the Eastern Fringe, there are whole tracts of space where the Imperium itself is nothing more than a half-remembered myth. There are many Imperial worlds in this far distant part of the galactic east, but so distant are they from Terra, that they can often go for centuries or more with no contact from the Imperium. This region of space is truly the frontier of Imperial space, where the impossibly ancient Halo Stars can be seen as flickering wyckfires beyond the furthest rims of the galaxy. The oldest stars in the galaxy, they are haunted, haunted places and few who ever set out to explore them have ever returned.

It is from these far-flung regions of space and the myriad hidden places within the Imperium itself that aliens beset Mankind, determined to enslave or destroy the Emperor's realm. Some of these races laid their claim to the galaxy whilst Humanity was in its infancy, the most ancient stalking the cosmos whilst it was still young. To them, humanity is an infestation to be scourged from the stars in a tide of blood. Yet others approach upon the Imperium from without, carving their empires from areas of space Mankind has long fought to occupy. To them, humanity is a lumbering, blind beast to be hunted and put to death to make room for the propagation of their own species. Without a constant battle against the countless races with whom it shares the galaxy, the Imperium would quickly be pulled apart and destroyed.

There are alien races in the galaxy that Man has fought tooth and nail for countless aeons, no less deadly for the understanding gained about such ancestral foes. The mysterious Eldar, the savage, green-skinned warriors of the Ork race, the Tau, whose empire on the Eastern Fringe of the Imperium is expanding at an alarming rate, the Necrons, immortal machines who have lain dormant since the dawn of time awaiting the call of their ancient star gods to begin the harvest of the living races once more, and several major alien races who have now revealed themselves in a war upon the Imperium, threatening to corrupt or destroy it once and for all.

Nevertheless it is a fool who believes that the alien races of the universe can be numbered easily, and in the dark corners of the galaxy countless alien races slither and dart.

## THE PERILS OF THE WARP

But the threat of the xeno is not least among the threats to the Imperium. Though it is the means by which Mankind has spread his empire across the stars, travel through the Warp is hazardous in the extreme. The tides of the immaterium make the voids of real space

seem familiar and safe, for its nature is fickle and perilous and to ply its shifting tides is to invite disaster. Storms of force and thought sweep through this immaterial realm, spinning craft out of control and obscuring the signal of the Astronomican, making navigation in their vicinity difficult if not impossible. There are several such warp/real space interfaces throughout the galaxy, the largest of these being the Maelstrom and the infamous Eye of Terror. These regions cannot be traversed except by the most experienced Navigators, and such are the hazardous conditions that virtually no expeditions into these areas return.

Warp storms are far from the only dangers within the Warp. Sentient energies and other immaterial lifeforms dwell within it: creatures formed from, and sustained by, the shifting energies of the Warp prowling the ether as sharks prowl the ocean. Diverse and multifarious, at best they are mindless, but the vast majority are predatory and extremely hostile. These entities thrive on the thoughts and emotions of those who dwell in the material universe, nurturing their foul ambitions of power and conquest. Even to think about them is to risk their vile attentions. Psykers draw their powers from the immaterial energies of Warp space and their souls burn like the brightest flames in the darkness of the Warp, drawing terrifying Warp creatures to them like moths to a flame. The Inquisition constantly hunts down such individuals, some to feed the Emperor's voracious appetite, some condemned to join the choir of the Astronomican, while others, whose mental fortitude is great enough, may become battle psykers of the Imperial Guard or even Space Marine Librarians.

These powerful psykers are capable of directing the energies of the Warp in hugely destructive ways, smiting their foes with bolts of psychic energy powerful enough to obliterate a battle tank. Space Marine Librarians are amongst the most terrifyingly powerful psykers in the galaxy, though it is only through a lifetime of discipline and training that they are able to use such abilities. Like all psykers, however, they walk a fine line between service to the Emperor and eternal damnation.

## DEFENDERS OF HUMANITY

Only by force of arms may the Imperium be held together, and only by the deaths of millions can it endure. Enemies attack from all sides, every aspect of the Imperium geared towards the struggle for survival, and the galaxy echoes to the clash of weapons and the thunder of mighty guns. The armies of the Emperor can afford no mercy, no weakness and no respite from their unending wars. The Imperial Navy sends fleets from its many sector

bases to do battle. Vast, city-sized constructions, most Naval vessels are thousands of years old, they are ancient gothic leviathans with terrifyingly powerful weapons and whole squadrons of fighters and bombers within their hangar decks. Entire battlefleets cross the gulf of space to bring ruin upon the foes of the Emperor, destroy their ships and pound their worlds into dust. The ships of the Navy also provide a forcible reminder to planetary governors of the might of the Imperium, and the arrival of only a single ship is often enough to bring many defiant worlds to heel.

As well as fleets of warships, the Imperial Navy is also tasked with the sacred duty of transporting the Imperial Guard from warzone to warzone. Forbidden by ancient decree from





# IMPERIUS DOMINATUS



"The Revered Houses of the Navis Nobilitate are one of the bastions upon which the Imperium is founded and the institution claims it can trace its ancestry back to the birth of our Great Empire.

The Great Families of the Navis Nobilitate are uniquely composed of a particular form of human called a Navigator. Tech-adepts have speculated widely over the development and nature of the Navigators' unusual talents and many cast hints at shadowy genetic transmutation and interbreeding during the founding of the Navis Nobilitate. Whatever their origins, the Navigators today are a glorious and esteemed organisation, loyal to the Imperium and stalwart in their faith. The peculiar powers of the Navigators can only be preserved by intermarriage; breeding with mundane humans eliminates the special abilities. This factor has led to the development of the closely-related Navigator families and the Navis Nobilitate as a whole."

Preface - Historia Et Structura  
Res Navis Nobilitate

"For the warp is a strange and terrible place. You might as well throw a traveller into a sea of sharks and tell him to swim home as send him through the warp unprotected. Better it is not to let common man travel through the stars. Better still, let him not know such a thing is feasible."

Fra Safrane, 5th aide to Navigator Daël.  
Comment made prior to the departure of the second mission to search for the missing freighter 'Pride of Angelus'.



IMPERIAL WORLD



INQUISITION STRONGHOLD



SPACE MARINE HOMEWORLD

CARDINAL WORLD



And henceforth be it known that the Imperium shall be divided into five great zones to be known as the Segmenta Majora. These shall each have a Segmentum Praefectus, from whence the orders of his glorious magnificence, the Emperor, shall be enacted. Imperialis Command Decoratum shall reside in each and with just duty be issued over the realms within their boundaries.

For the Segmentum Solar, this shall be Mars, World of the Adeptus Mechanicus and this Segment shall extend about Mars. Beneficent Emperor's Imperium. In the north of our most majestic domains shall be Segmentum Oceanus, being in fiefdom to the world of Cypra Mundi. To the South it shall make Segmentum Tempestus, with overlordship residing with the planetary estates of the hereditary Bakka.

To the West shall be Segmentum Pacificus, under the auspices of the Lords of Hydraphar. The most turbulent East, a region of much strife and dissension and of many lost worlds shall have its overlordship known as Ultima Segmentum, and its guarantor of safety shall be on the planetary Governor Kai Duniash. The Segment Fortress of the Imperial official of the Administratum shall be known as the Master of the Segmentum Solar. Lastly, the region of Segmentum Pacificus, and the Master of the Ultima Segmentum. In this the Emperor is most beneficent and thus shall the Emperor's charges be authority over each domains and reside with those who have the faith and temperament to dictate to the will of those others and take from them that which is the Emperor's due.



UL01.01  
Orb. Dist. 2.01AU  
1.48G/Temp 23°C  
Adeptus Astartes Home World  
Title Grade: Adeptus Non  
Aestimare: D0  
Population: 400,000,000  
Defeat of Hive Fleet Behemoth  
(qf: Battle of Macragge 745.M41)

QUINTARN  
Agri World

CALTH  
Cavern World

IAX  
Garden World

KONOR  
Ad. Mech.  
Research World

MASALI  
Agri World

TALASSAR  
Ocean World

TALASA PRIME  
Inquisition  
Fortress

MACRAGGE  
Ultramarines  
Homeworld

PARMENIO  
Ultramarines  
Training World

PRANDIUM  
Dead World

TARENTUS  
Agri World





The last echoes of bolter fire faded from the pit as Artiga Scybale of the Iron Warriors strode through the ruins of the Imperial machine-priests' dig site. The burnished iron of his armour was dented and scored where the False Emperor's soldiers defending the site had fought back with surprising tenacity, but against the unstoppable might of the Iron Warriors, the outcome of the battle had never been in doubt. Fully three hundred metres across and fifty deep, the pit was illuminated by bright arc-lights and burning drums of promethium, bathing the entire pit in a hellish, soulless orange glow.

His three battle squads fanned through the pit, securing the site and despatching those of their foes who still lived. Satisfied that everything was in place, he turned back to the centre of the pit, staring in undisguised relish at the prize before him. Standing atop a great basalt slab, a great crescent of silvered metal rose high above the floor of

the pit, its gleaming surface etched with bizarre symbols and studded with jade stones with what appeared to be a multi-faceted gemstone at its centre. Scybale was unsure, but it appeared that there was a faint glow from its heart, though he dismissed it as reflections from the flames and arc-lights.

Ribbed cables snaked across the grey dust of the pit floor to the great structure, attached by means of gold and brass connectors to the basalt slab. Droning generators poured power into the

structure and as he slammed a fresh magazine into his bolter, the silver crescent began pulsing with a deathly, spectral glow. A low humming built at the threshold of hearing, building to a great, pulsing beat, like that of an enormous, subterranean heart.

He marched towards the gleaming structure, now certain that the gem at its centre was indeed glowing with its own internal light. Shouts of warning were the next sign that something was wrong, and Scybale watched as the ground beside the structure began shifting and sinking as gleaming silver skulls pushed their way clear of the dust. The grinning skulls rose, dust pouring from eye sockets that shone with a hellish blue fire. Metallic torsos and thin limbs carrying long rifles with bladed muzzles from which flickering green fire leapt came next as the silver skeletal warriors rose from the ground with unnatural slowness. Their heads turning in unison towards the Iron Warriors as a tide of glittering, insect-like creatures boiled from the dust around them.

Scybale raised his weapon as the silver creatures climbed from the sand, firing a hail of shells into the closest warrior and dropping it to the ground. He switched targets, despatching another with equal ease. He marched steadily towards the structure as his warriors closed in on the gleaming skeletons. He pumped shot after shot into these interlopers, damned if he would allow them to snatch away his prize. But as he shot another to the ground, he saw the warriors he had felled pick themselves up, the giant craters his bolter fire had blasted vanishing as their metallic flesh ran like mercury to flow and reknit their bodies. All across the pit, downed enemy warriors were climbing back to their feet, heedless of the damage done to them. Bolter fire echoed from the sides of the pit, its volume diminishing as more and more of his men were dragged down by these implacable foes. He watched in horror as his men toppled to their knees, their armour disintegrating under the fire of the enemy guns and their flesh flaying from their bones in blistering coronas of green fire.

Scybale spun as he felt grasping talons tug at his leg armour. The blasted torso of one of the silver warriors clawed at him, pulling itself up his body. He lashed out against it, but it refused to release him, continuing to climb him as another on his enemies seized him around the neck. He roared in anger, driving his elbow into the creature behind him, but its grip on his throat was unbreakable and he felt himself being dragged to the ground as yet more of the silver daemons attacked him. He struggled against them, but was held immobile as grey dust spilled over him and he was dragged into the darkness beneath the ground.





maintaining their own fleets, the Imperial Guard is beholden to the Navy to ferry its regiments across the galaxy. Packed into colossal transports, tens of thousands of soldiers and their wargear are shipped to distant star systems to fight and die on planets most will never have heard of.

### THE IMPERIAL GUARD

The vast armies of the Imperial Guard are the sledgehammer with which the enemies of mankind can be smashed asunder, covering the battlefields of the Imperium in their millions. The soldiers of the Emperor are as numerous as the stars themselves, and when the Guard goes to war, the very earth shakes with the rumble of tanks, the thunder of artillery and the pounding of marching feet. Raised from every world in the Imperium, the Imperial Guard is a hugely diverse organisation, with each regiment having all manner of special skills that they can bring to bear. The Catachan regiments come from one of the most lethal Death worlds in the galaxy and are expert jungle fighters, the Tanith First and Only are stealth troopers without equal and the Narmerian Armoured brigades specialise in lightning-fast attacks with heavy tanks.

The Imperial Guard fights vast crusades to liberate entire star systems or sectors from alien or rebel domination. Led by Warmasters, powerful men in whose hands the fate of millions rests, they fight on countless worlds, with crusades sometimes lasting generations

and not stopping until victory is won, though the butcher's bill may cost the blood of every man fighting. Further down the chain of command are the Lords General Militant and the Colonels of each regiment, where command decisions are based on more immediate tactical concerns rather than the grand strategies employed by the higher echelons of command. To be a soldier of the Imperial Guard on the front line of battle itself is to be one among faceless billions, facing the horrors of a deadly galaxy with nothing but a lasgun and courage to call his own. Led by courageous officers and the feared Commissars, the soldiers of the Imperial Guard are truly the Hammer of the Emperor's wrath.

### THE SPACE MARINES

However, sometimes a sledgehammer approach to war is too slow to react to developing warzones, and when a rapid strike is required, it is the warriors of the Space Marines who will fight. Genetically enhanced super-beings created by the Emperor at the dawn of the Imperium, the Space Marines are the greatest warriors in the galaxy, fighting with a depth of faith and courage that no mortal man can match.

With the best weapons and armour in the Imperium, the Adeptus Astartes are the Angels of Death, striking like bolts of lightning from an empty sky and destroying key enemy personnel and installations before they can react.

Organised into Chapters of a thousand warriors, the Space Marines are the most supreme fighting force in the galaxy, Angels of Death who smite their enemies without mercy. Stronger, faster and tougher than almost any foe imaginable, their bioengineered bodies can fight in any environment and survive the most traumatic of wounds, enabling a Space Marine to fight until his body has been utterly destroyed. The enemies of the Imperium fear many things. They fear discovery, defeat, despair and death. Yet there is one thing they fear above all others – they fear the wrath of the Space Marines.

### A GALAXY OF WAR

Only by such ruthless, oppressive measures can the Imperium hope to survive; only by such drastic, unbending rules can Humanity defeat the myriad foes arrayed against it. Every citizen of the Imperium is but a statistic, a tiny spark lost against the backdrop of the stars and forgotten, obscured by newer, brighter sparks by the time they are even noticed.

This is a dark age, a bloody age – an age where the power of technology is but a half-remembered myth, where the promise of progress and understanding has been cast aside in favour of war and bloodshed. There can be no peace in this Imperium of Man, no respite from the horror of an uncaring universe, only an eternity of carnage and the laughter of thirsting gods.





# AND THEY SHALL KNOW NO FEAR

CODEX: SPACE MARINES BY GRAHAM MCNEILL

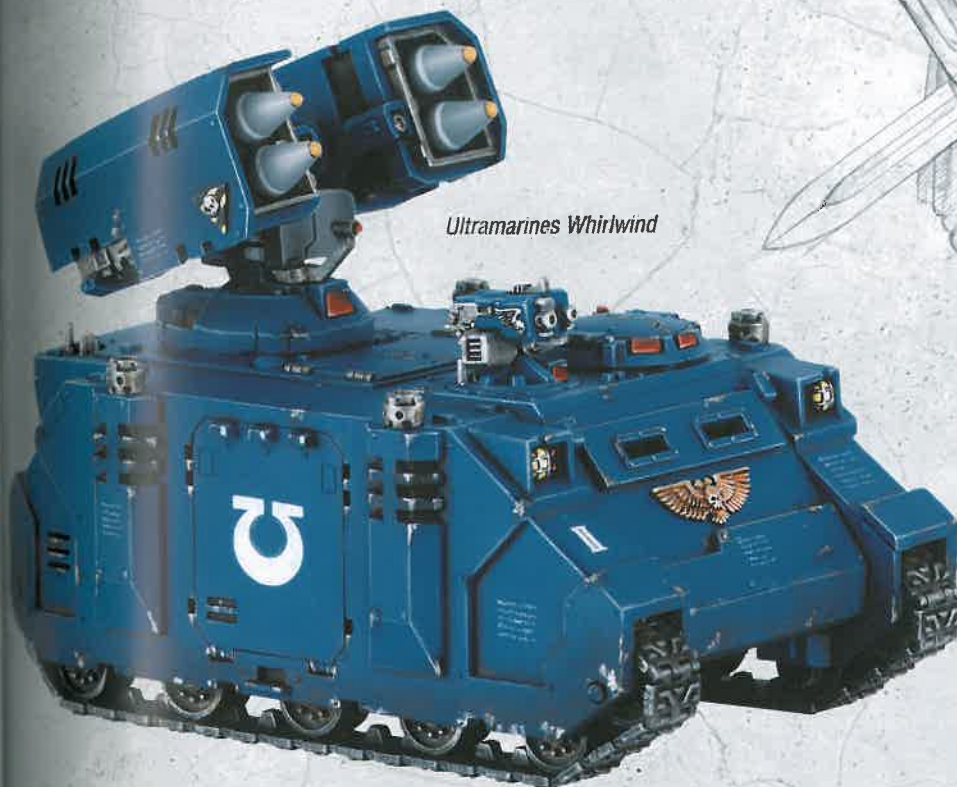
**"G**enetically altered superhuman warriors created from the flesh of the Emperor Himself, the Space Marines are the greatest defenders of Humanity, standing resolute against the myriad horrors of a hostile galaxy. They are superior to normal humans in every respect, thanks to a brutal regime of genetic modification, psycho-conditioning and a life of strict discipline that only such enhanced warriors can endure. A Space Marine can survive wounds that would kill a normal man thrice over, fight in the harshest conditions imaginable and has a depth of faith that is unquenchable in its force of belief. Armed with the bolt gun, a weapon of divine wrath, and armoured in ancient, artificer-forged suits of power armour, the Space Marines are living embodiments of the Emperor's Will. They are the Angels of Death, the fire of the Emperor's wrath and none can stand before them. With fire and steel they cleanse the stars of the xeno, purge the galaxy of the wicked and destroy the enemies of Mankind without mercy."





**C**odex: Space Marines is the first of the Warhammer 40,000 codex books to be redone in the wake of the revised edition of the rules and, as such, we've lavished quite a bit of attention on it. Inside the book (assuming you make it past the fantastic Karl Kopinski cover!) you'll find the complete Space Marine army list, which allows you to choose your forces for a tabletop battle. Also included are special rules for selecting unique traits to personalise your own Chapter and give it a flavour beyond the strictures of the Codex Astartes, while maintaining its Codex origins. Also included is a wealth of background, with details of the legendary origins of the Space Marines, their

illustrious legacy of battle and their means of recruitment, training and fighting. You'll also find guidance on the iconography and heraldry of the Space Marines, together with expert tips on collecting, painting and modelling a Space Marine army. There are also complete rules and background information for five special characters: Lord Marneus Calgar, Chief Librarian Tigurius, Chaplain Cassius (all of the Ultramarines Chapter) Captain Lysander of the Imperial Fists and Captain Shrike of the Raven Guard. And as if that wasn't enough, there are rules for two special Ultramarines units, the Honour Guard of the Chapter Banner and Tyrannic War Veterans!



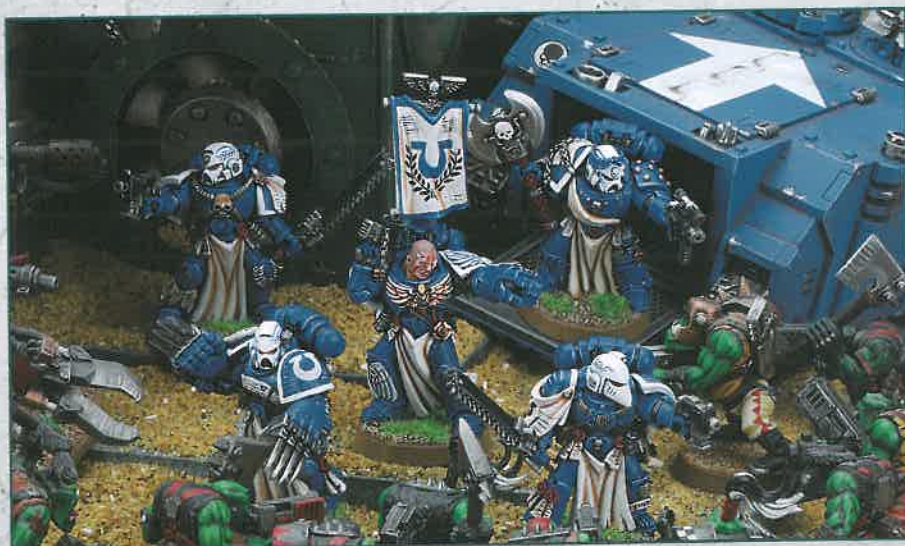
*Ultramarines Whirlwind*



*Ultramarines Second Company Captain*



*Ultramarines Second Company Standard Bearer*



*Ultramarines Veterans take the fight to the enemy*



The sweet aroma of incense filled the *Severian's* launch bay, drifting in lazy coils from the incense burners carried by the Chaplaincy Hierophants who followed Chaplain Clausel. The scent reminded Captain Agemman of the northern highlands of Macragge and he experienced a moment's nostalgia for his homeworld before his thoughts returned to the skull-masked Chaplain's prayers. He and a score of his fellow warriors of the Ultramarines' First Company knelt to receive Chaplain Clausel's blessing before climbing into their drop pods to begin the assault on the Tau colony below. Techmarines and expressionless servitors ministered to the drop pods, using silver aspergillum to anoint their charges with blessed oils and removing the sacred warding pins that chained them to the *Severian's* deck.

"Into the fires of battle we go," intoned Clausel.

"Unto the anvil of war we strike," replied the Space Marines.

"We are the Ultramarines, warriors of the Emperor and our bravery is beyond question! It is the stuff of the soul-forge, stronger than adamantium and enduring as the Immortal Emperor Himself. The fires of battle are our places of worship, the roar of bolters our prayers and the slaughter of our foes an offering to the gods of battle!"

"Our bolters are charged with death," promised the assembled Space Marines, "they are the divine wrath of the Emperor!"

Clausel nodded and stopped before the opening of the nearest drop pod, turning as his acolytes approached with his Crozius Arcanum and Rosarius borne within vermilion-lined reliquary boxes. The Crozius glittered as Clausel lifted it from the box, torchlight winking from the blood-red eyes of the winged skull atop the weapon. Clausel leaned forward and allowed a hierophant with a gold facemask to place the Rosarius around his neck, the heavy chain of the protective amulet contrasting starkly with the black of his armour.

Agemman rose to his feet and the warriors of his company followed suit, the launch bay echoing to the crash of booted feet slamming to attention. He marched to stand beside Clausel and turned to his assembled warriors.

"Look to your weapons, brothers," he said. "We go to war!"

The sky above the Tau outpost on Nimbosa was a dirty, smudged mess of contrails and flak, batteries of pulse cannon painting the sky with traceries of fire. Streamers of fire streaked the sky as the Space Marine drop pods slashed downwards towards their targets. Smoke from burning buildings twisted in the wind and flames crackled hungrily as they devoured the fledgling xeno

outpost. Tau tanks glided through the ruins as the first of the drop pods impacted on the surface of the planet in great wash of flaring rocket engines. The armoured sides of the drop pod clanged open and Captain Agemman swiftly debarked from the pod onto the surface of Nimbosa, his Terminators following him out and forming a perimeter.

"All squads, converge on my position, wedge formation. Target dead ahead!"

Scrambling teams of alien soldiers opened fire on the newly-arrived Terminators, but the blessings placed upon them held firm and not a single warrior fell. The answering fire of the Terminators ripped through the Tau warriors, shredding them in a hail of mass-reactive bolts. More and more drop pods were landing, the blue-armoured Space Marines spreading out in a pre-arranged pattern to secure the landing zone and push onto the Tau battery position. Thunderhawk gunships were en route with yet more warriors and the Tau anti-aircraft guns had proven uncannily adept at shooting down Imperial aircraft. That could not be allowed to continue. Agemman watched Chaplain Clausel cut down Tau warriors like wheat before the scythe, his Crozius Arcanum a blinding, golden arc as it clove through alien armour and flesh. His bellowed Litanies of Hate spurred those around him to greater effort and the slaughter was magnificent to behold.

Explosions and gunfire filled the air, the whine of pulse rounds and the chatter of bolter fire mingling in an all-consuming crescendo. Agemman and his Terminators smashed through the barricades protecting the makeshift entrance to the battery. An actinic pulse of blue light lit up the landscape as the guns fired and Agemman knew they did not have much time. A trio of mechanised battlesuits, the elite warriors of Tau, came into view, powerful weapons spitting bright bolts of death at his warriors. Brother Hellon, the veteran of the Gabalas Crusade fell, his arm a bloody ruin, the flesh and armour fused in a molten mass. But the doughty warrior picked himself up, pain balms dispensed from his armour, allowing the veteran to carry on fighting despite such a horrific wound.

"Jantine!" shouted Agemman. "Assault cannon!"

Brother Jantine swung the multiple barrels of his weapon around, the whine of the motor cutting through the barks of gunfire and crump of explosions. Shells spat from the barrel of the assault cannon, kicking up great plumes of powdered rockcrete and alien blood as hundreds of shells tore through the battlesuits in a matter of seconds. Shells continued to rip the alien warriors apart long after they were dead.

"Enough!" called Agemman. "To needlessly expend ammunition is wasteful. Assign yourself three days fasting for lax targeting rituals."

"Yes, brother captain," said Jantine, bowing his head. "It will not happen again." Agemman accepted Jantine's contrition and said, "I know that, but let us push on. This battery is not going to destroy itself."

Agemman watched as the last of the charge detonated and the great barrels of the assault battery came crashing down. Flames leapt skyward and the noise of Imperial transports inbound for the liberated airfields was deafening. He and his warriors gathered in a circle to give thanks for their victory and to offer their prayers to the war spirits of the battle gear. The number of alien dead was unknown yet, though Agemman knew it would be high. They had left no survivors and the site had been well defended. But so well defended that it could stand before the might of the Space Marines.

He finished the Litany of the Warrior and rose to his feet as Chaplain Clausel approached, the wings and skull of his Crozius Arcanum stained red with the blood of his foes. The two Space Marines shook hands in the warrior's grip, wrist-to-wrist.

"Your men fought with courage and honour," said Clausel.

"Aye, that they did, your courage was an example to us all."

Clausel nodded. "In these difficult times, warriors need an example to follow."

Agemman nodded, as well as exhorting the Space Marines to greater and greater feats of courage. It was a Chaplain's sacred task to minister to the spiritual well-being of his company. The recent loss of the 4th Company's captain and its senior sergeant had inflicted a serious blow to its warriors' morale and Clausel had spent many long days in prayer and fasting with them.

"Will you take prayer with my men?" asked Agemman, changing the subject.

"That I will, Captain Agemman," said Clausel. "I would offer them the Benediction of Battle."

"We would be honoured for you to spare it," nodded Agemman.



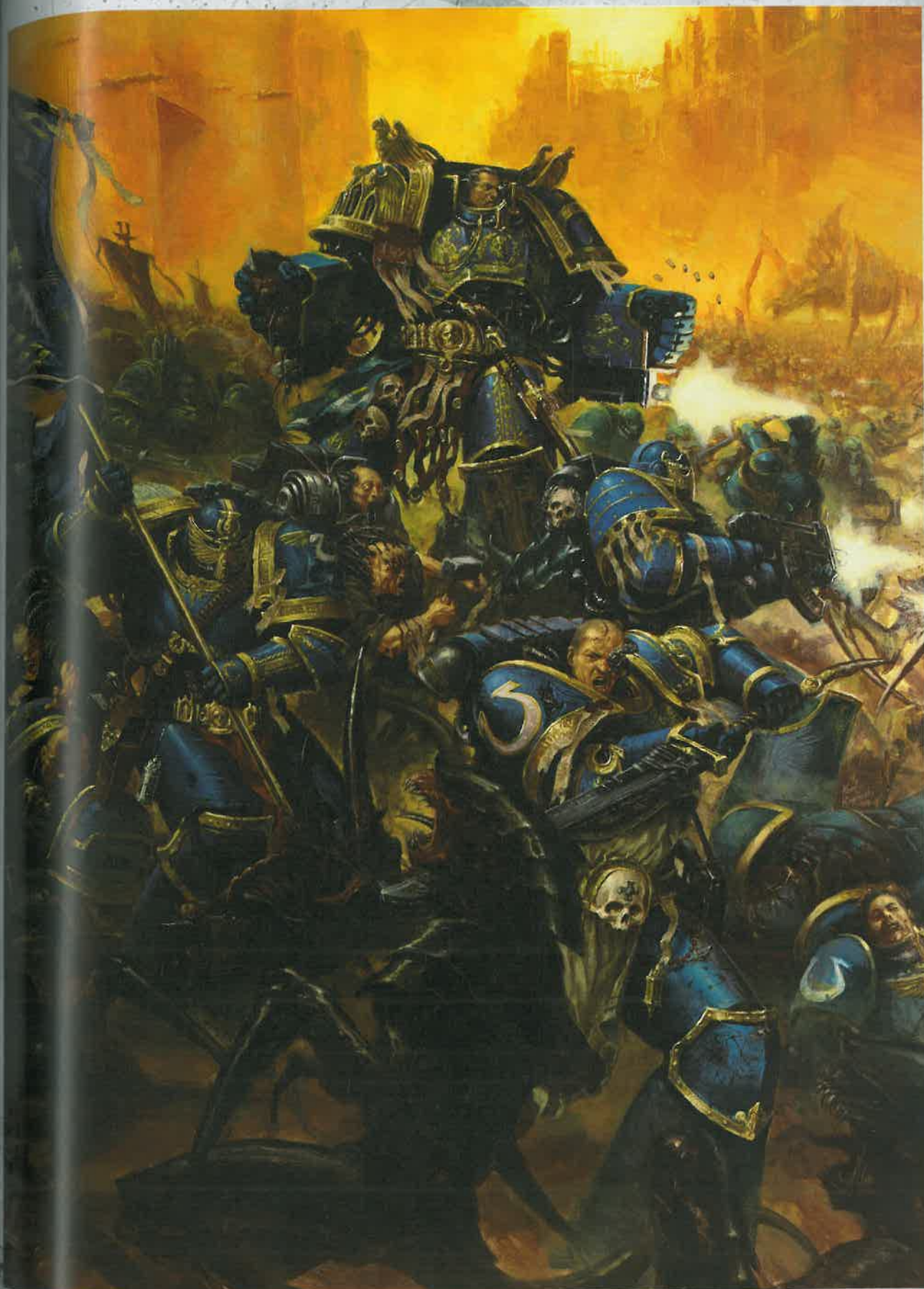


"said Jantine,  
not happen again."  
Jantine's contrition  
let us push on  
to destroy itself."

the last of the charges  
barrels of the gun  
own. Flames leapt  
Imperial transports  
airfields was  
riors gathered in  
eir victory and to  
war spirits of their  
f alien dead was  
mman knew it  
eft no survivors  
defended. But not  
uld stand before  
rines  
of the Warrior and  
n Clause!  
d skull of his  
ed with the blood  
Marines shock  
wrist-to-wrist  
courage and

ur courage was an  
ese difficult times  
to follow."  
well as exhorting  
er and greater  
haplain's sacred  
tual well-being of  
ss of the 4th  
senior sergeant  
to its warriors'  
ent many long  
with them.  
ith my men?"  
the subject  
emman," said  
the Benediction

d for you to speak





# SONS OF GUILLIMAN

COLLECTING ULTRAMARINES WITH TROY FORSTER

**When we spotted Troy Forster's fantastic Ultramarines army in the cabinets of the new Games Workshop Parramatta Command Centre, we couldn't resist sharing them with our readers. He has really gone to town with detailing this army.**

**Before you started, did you have a vision of what you expected the army to look like?**

Not really, the army has developed over time, unit by unit. I tend to set out with a vision of how a unit will look and that sets the tone for the rest of the army.

**Is every model converted, and if so, why?**

Most of them are converted. I wanted each model to tell a story as an individual and as a unit. Generally Space Marines look the same so it's the action that the model is doing that tells the story. The conversions are generally fairly simple, repositioning arms and legs, adding straps, purity seals and packs.

**How long does a model take you (roughly) from a sprue to finished?**

A standard tactical marine takes about five hours from start to finish. The majority of the time is spent ensuring the paint on the armour panels is thin and smooth.

**How big are you planning on making the army?**

I'm going to try to finish the 2nd Company in battle deployment. That means there will be 104 marines (Captain, Chaplain, 2 Apothecaries, 100 standard marines), but broken up into deployments. This means 7th squad is a six man assault squad and four marines piloting the two standard Land Speeders. The 2nd squad is a six man tactical squad with the other four forming part of the Captain's command squad. A little pedantic, I know...

**Why did you chose Ultramarines for this level of detail?**

I've been working in Games Workshop Hobby Centres for over six years now and for the great majority, the first miniature someone joining the hobby paints is an Ultramarine. So



*The Command Squad of the Ultramarines 2nd Company led by Captain Ixion, complete with Codex Astartes reading Veteran Sergeant.*



*Troy's versatile Scout squad Tibius is equipped for just about any situation their Infiltrate ability could get them into.*



Some of our readers might remember Troy's army from *White Dwarf* 284 when it featured in a article showcasing some '40K in 40 Minutes' armies. Troy enjoyed painting and modeling that force so much that he decided to expand it to the entire Second Company of Ultramarines. You can see that he's well on his way with the units featured here.



AN

TROY FORSTER

2nd Company is there will be in, 2 (marines), but This means 7th quad and four dard Land i six man tactical nning part of the little pedantic.

ines for this

Vorkshop Hobby n and for the ure someone Ultramarine. So



*The squad that started it all, Squad Heirous of the Ultramarines 2nd Company.*

Sergeant.



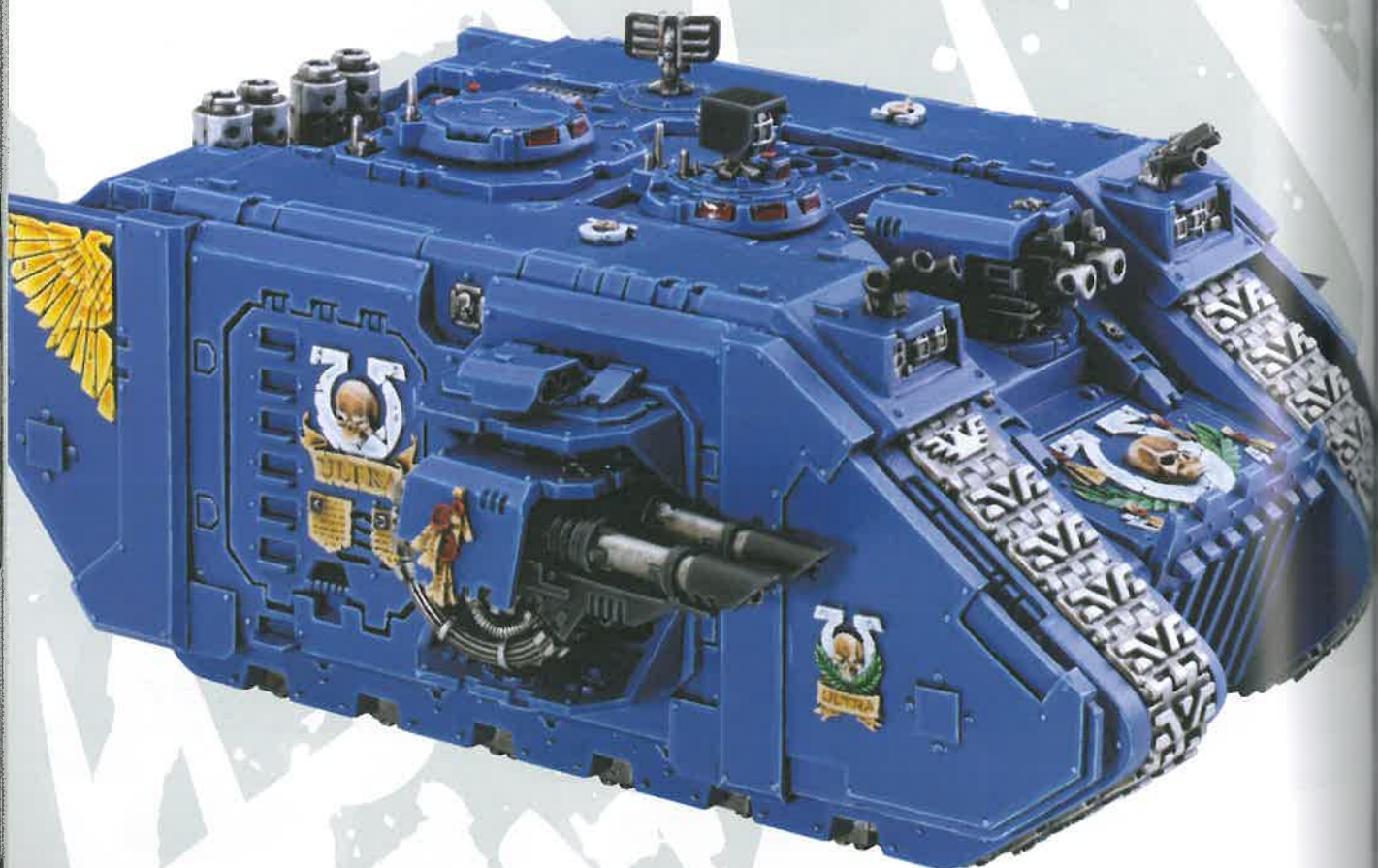
*Squad Strabo is the traditional Space Marine Tactical squad, complete with Flamer, Missile Launcher and a Rhino transport.*



*The missing marine  
from Squad Opeth.*



*Troy's third Tactical squad, Squad Opeth.*



*The mighty behemoth that is Troy's Land Raider Gladius.*



I've seen a lot of Ultramarines painted to differing levels, but everyone tends to move onto a different army because they've already done Ultramarines. I decided to give them the attention they deserve.

With the new Warhammer 40,000 rules out now and the new Space Marine Codex soon to be released, are you planning on changing any of the squad's options or painting new units?

No chance! The Codex Astartes has guided the Ultramarines since their founding and the coming era only make the principles held within all the better. I've played a few

games with them and the flexibility of a tactical squad is awesome in the new game, so no need to change anything.

**Which is your favourite squad?**

It changes after each game, depending on what new tactics I used and if they worked or not. Overall though it is probably 2nd Squad. They are the first unit I painted and they have that hardbitten, patrol unit feel about them. They are the reason the rest of the army came about.

**What are you working on next?**

I've just stuck together 10th Squad, which is

a six man Devastator squad with a Razorback transport.

**What book is the Veteran in the Command squad reading?**

When I was painting it, I was thinking of it as a field version of the Codex Astartes, but a few people have said it might be the manual for the Goodwyn pattern Bolter...

**Once you've sold your soul to the Chaos Gods to paint that well, is there any way to get out of the deal?**

I don't know, the last heretic I saw didn't get time to answer the question...



*Troy has managed to give Assault squad Avial a real sense of movement.*



*The remainder of squad Avial have forgone their Jump Packs and instead pilot Landspeeders.*



# WILL OF IRON CONCLUSION

CHRISTIAN BYRNE COMPLETES HIS TOURNAMENT ARMY



Christian Byrne

**C**hristian only has a short time before he takes his new Iron Warriors army out onto the tournament scene. This month sees his army completed, while his brutal education in the art of war continues as Vathek

and his evil band take on the Black Legion, Speed Freaks and the Dark Angels.

**Christian:** Welcome to the final instalment of Will of Iron – my journey into the world of Warhammer 40,000 tournaments and tournament armies. It's become a real, sometimes gruelling, mission to create this unique yet cohesive army, but the challenge was worth it, particularly now the whole force sits on a table in front of me and I am full of the satisfied hobbyist's glow. The project has covered all bases of the Games Workshop hobby. Not only has there been the converting and painting of the army, but also the playtesting of the list and the creation of backstory (something my competitors can

look at to get an overall impression of Vathek's history and mission). But of all the elements it has been the playtesting that has proven to be the most eye-opening part of the whole venture.

I have had to come to grips with a few realities about how to play. I'm more of a painter than a player, not a bad thing, as that's the part of the hobby I enjoy the most, but I have a very one-dimensional view of how to play, and my other armies are very assault driven. My Black Legion and my Word Bearers may not be full of Berserkers, but I really do enjoy mixing it up in the Assault phase, so I max out on close combat troops and Daemons. This style of play also means I'm not too fussed who wins as long as there's a good scrap. Of course, there's nothing wrong with this, as that's what Warhammer 40,000 is about! But this focus on assault becomes a problem when playing with a shooty army like the Iron Warriors.

As much as I've been developing a new style of painting, I've had to begin to think about a more long ranged style of play. This means

not always going for the throat, something that's taken me a while to get used to.

## THE STORY CONTINUES

Like wolves attracted to wounded prey, the Iron Warriors have homed in on a distress signal from an Imperial facility on Hierodon VI. Once they make planetfall, Vathek orders his men to form a convoy before he embarks aboard his Rhino. A few hours later, one of his scouts reports that the facility is in sight, but there is something else...

This 'something else' could be anything. The backstory gives a reason for Vathek to be at war. Now, with a bit of imagination, every game is a stage in the army's history – part of a fluid narrative that develops real character within the army. For me this makes the whole hobby more fun. The Imperial installation could have been attacked by any race for all kinds of reasons. It may even be a trap for Vathek set by a rival Chaos Lord, who knows? The only way to find out is to play. Now Vathek and his men must face whatever caused the outpost to send out the signal on the tabletop.

*The Dreadnought Dakroth lumbers forward in advance of the main body of Vathek's forces.*





something  
sed to.

ed prey, the  
n a distress  
on Hierodcn  
/athek orders  
re he embarks  
later, one of his  
s in sight, out

anything. The  
ithek to be at  
tion, every  
istory – part of  
eal character  
akes the whole  
nstallation  
y race for all  
e a trap for  
d, who knows?  
lay. Now  
whatever  
the signal on

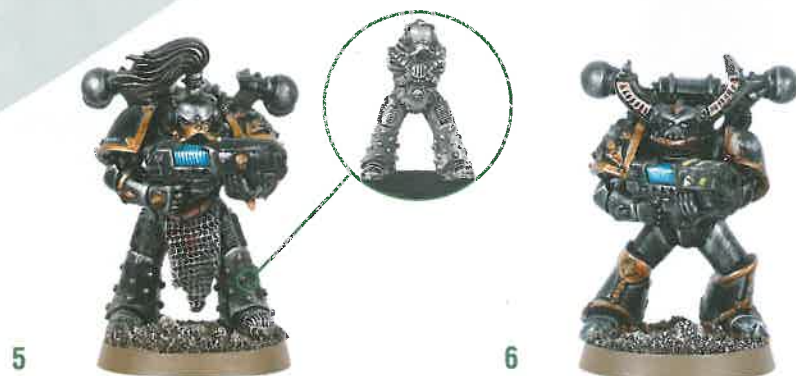
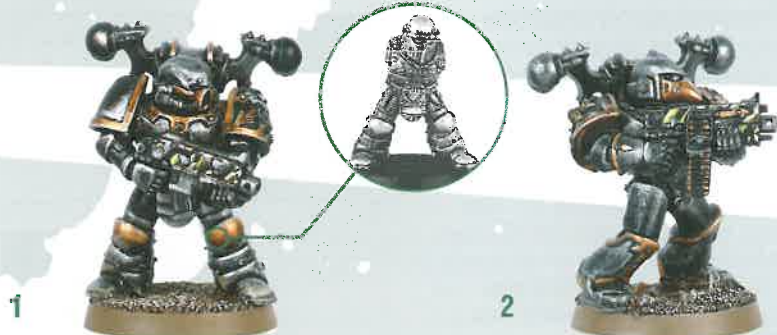
The last squad in the army fills an anti-armour role, specifically designed for taking down power-armoured troops at medium range. Hence they are armed with plasma guns and the hideous Kai Gun. Conversion-wise these guys are as mixed a bunch as the rest of the squads, each looking different from his comrades. With this squad I decided to go with a unifying theme that sets them apart from the Chaos Space Marines in other squads – each one (besides the Aspiring Champion) would have their helmet faceplates painted the same colour as the armour trim.

The first Chaos Space Marine uses the bottom half of the archive Space Marine dressed in Crusade armour (always save your off-cuts, some of these Iron Warriors use parts that I kept over from the previous two articles). It was easy enough to file down the leg piece to fit neatly with an Iron Warrior torso. The rest of the components are straight off the Chaos Space Marine Sprue.

I just had to make number 2. I have loved the Mark 6 style helmets ever since the original plastic "beakee" Space Marines were released for Rogue Trader. Everything else is standard kit. Chaos Space Marine number 3 uses some Chaos shoulder pads and one of the bolt gun arms from the Iron Hands. The body is a Space Marine and the head is a Chaos Havoc head. Number 4 uses the final Iron Warrior variant head with a mix of Space Marine and Chaos Space Marine parts.

Number 5, the first of the plasma gunners, is another of the those archive Space Marine bodies, this time the Maximus variant. I used the whole body this time and made a few additions, namely the top knot and the chainmail that hangs from his armour. The chainmail was the most difficult to create, being cut from the Aspiring Champion front armour plate and then filed down to fit. Chaos Space Marine 6 uses a head from the classic Chaos Raptors with the horns turned up. The rest of him is a plastic Chaos Space Marine.

The last model, 7, is the Aspiring Champion of the unit and was a bit of nightmare at first. The Kai Gun is described as an archaic heavy bolter. Easy enough, but what I wanted was to make it look as if it was hard-wired to the Chaos Space Marine. Some of my initial ideas really didn't work at all well. For instance, at one point he had a servo arm with a double barrelled heavy bolter mounted on it and it looked terrible! I settled on using another Iron Hand bolt gun arm (which looks hard-wired into the gun), with a cut down Chaos Havoc autocannon, which I clipped and filed until it fitted into place. The rest of the model is more plastic Chaos and Space Marine parts with the addition of a bionic Iron Hand leg, again left over from a previous conversion. Finally, I pinned a top knot from the new Warhammer Chaos Warriors to the head from the Space Marine Command sprue.





## CHAOS DREADNOUGHT DAKROTH

Dakroth was once one of Vathek's most able Aspiring Champions, favoured by his lord for his willingness to take the fight directly to the enemy. One encounter led Dakroth into mortal combat against a Space Marine Commander who promptly brought Dakroth's aspirations to a very sharp, energy-sheathed end. After the skirmish had ended Vathek took the barely alive fallen champion and incarcerated him within a salvaged Imperial Space Marine Dreadnought. Since that time Dakroth has continued to serve his master.

Dakroth is obviously modelled on a Space Marine Dreadnought, but he also uses Forge World parts, namely the preheresy power claw, the plasma cannon and the spikes on the top (left over from the Chaos Rhino extra armour upgrade kit). The Smoke launcher and the hook on his plasma gun come from the Chaos Vehicle sprue.



**Building the head:** I wanted Dakroth to have a face, looking something like he might have had when he was still a man. To this end I filed down one of the heads from a Defiler as this looked very Iron Warrior-esque. Using Green Stuff I fitted it to the front part of the Imperial Dreadnought and filled in the eyes. I ran about half a dozen lengths of guitar wire from underneath the head into the lower part of the sarcophagus where I had drilled holes for them. Then I used part of the flail from the Defiler to form a gorget, and filled in the under section.



**Painting the head:** Dakroth is just a big Iron Warrior so I painted him like the rest of the Chaos Space Marines. I must admit I was very satisfied with the end result as he seems to have a cold merciless look about him, his eyes having a character all of their own.



**Plasma Cannon:** I wanted the gun to look like it gets hot, so I applied charring to the end of the barrel. This is achieved by first drybrushing Tin Bitz, followed by drybrushing Chaos Black. I used this technique on all the army's plasma guns. For how to paint the gun cells, see below.



**Power Claw:** This is painted in much the same way as everything else, however I concentrated the highlights around the sharpened edges of the claw to make it look nice and deadly.



## LENSES AND JEWELS



**1** Start by painting a base colour over Chaos Black (I've used Red Gore in this instance). This technique requires some blending, so you have to water the paint down somewhat.



**2** Use a 50/50 mixture of the first colour and a second complimentary colour (normally a yellow or white), I've used Bad Moon Yellow. Start on the left side and blend inward a third of the way.



**3** Once dry, go over the left hand rim again with pure Bad Moon Yellow. You might have to go over a few times until this colour is bold enough to stand out from the mixture from stage 2.



**4** On the right hand rim side use black and blend into the Red Gore, again, one third of the way inward. I find that watering the colour down a bit makes this stage much easier.



**5** Use a small dot of Skull White in the black area, this represents a reflection of some kind of distant light. Finally, apply a coat of Gloss Varnish to add that bit of extra shine.

## PLASMA CELLS



**1** First I painted the entire area Hawk Turquoise. I made sure I covered the area completely, painting right into the recesses.



**2** The first highlight is a 1:4 mix of Hawk Turquoise and Skull White. This was layered on to leave the previous colour showing through.



**3** Using a 1:2 blend of Hawk Turquoise and Skull White, I went over the area again, leaving the previous layers showing.



**4** The final highlight is Skull White. After I layered this on, I used some Gloss Varnish to make the cells appear glassy and transparent.



## RUNNING THE GAUNTLET (AGAIN!)

Since last issue I've been boldly venturing forth and testing some of my new tactics. After last month's drubbings I dropped some of the Chaos Space Marines from the squad featured in this issue. These extra points I used to upgrade Vathek. Originally he was only going to be used in a defensive role, but over the course of a few games it became apparent that he was primarily being used to attack rival assault units before they could do too much damage to some of the more fragile troops in my army. This meant upgrading him to a Lord so he could legally have a couple of extra things, like Daemonic Resilience (when coupled with the extra Wound from being a Lord this made him far more resilient) and mastercrafting his power weapon. Both of these upgrades proved helpful in the next series of games. But there were also disadvantages to losing those extra Chaos Space Marines, as you will see.

### Game 1: My Black Legion

I decided that I should try to play against another Chaos Space Marine army, so I asked tournament veteran Paul Scott to make a 1,000 point army using my Black Legion. There is only one thing I can say in respect to this game: "Oh my word." The Black Legion went first and that was the beginning of the end, really. A well placed battle-cannon round from the Defiler blew away most of the Havocs and immobilised the Basilisk. His Dreadnought used its plasma cannon to burn a great big hole in the squad featured this issue. Then my Dreadnought went nuts. Denied line of sight to the enemy, it decided to vaporize the rest of my already damaged squad. I had to laugh, it was after all a hilarious opening and pretty much put victory

out of reach. But I continued. Vathek and his squad sped out to head off the advancing Black Legion Rhinos, hopefully getting close enough to the enemy Dreadnought to knock a hole in it with the Champion's powerfist. We had a bit of skirmish in the centre, the Dreadnoughts destroying each other in spectacular fashion, but by Turn 4 it all caught up with me and I had to concede. I had been massacred and was beginning to think that the Iron Warriors were cursed.

### Game 2: Owen Rees' Dark Angels

I put the terrible defeat of the last game behind me and decided to play an experienced Space Marine player. Owen's a tournament player and has been playing with his Dark Angels for years. I decided to try and set up to take maximum advantage if I got Turn 1, I also needed to get rid of his Vindicator quickly. Unfortunately I didn't go first. Initially my casualties were light but this didn't last long as I was outmanoeuvred and outnumbered. I would also say that I was unlucky, my dice rolls were below average and this worked to increase my losses and decrease Owen's. Good game though, I will need to be careful of being outnumbered by power-armoured opponents in the future.

### Game 3: Guy Haley's Speed Frenks

Guy and I decided to give the Iron Warriors another go against the dreaded Speed Frenks. This time, however, they came in greater numbers. After the last two games I decided to take my tactics a little more seriously. After some serious thinking, I decided to deploy in a wide arc with my Infiltrators on the far flank. With the exception of my Dreadnought, which works well up front, I held the rest of the army as far back as possible. This game went

differently, the law of averages swung back to the middle ground, and all of a sudden my luck went from shocking to reasonable. The Iron Warriors began to dish the punishment out as I knew they could, destroying enough of the Ork's vehicles to slow their advance to a manageable level. Each part of the army worked well, not brilliantly, but just as I expected they would. I used Vathek to intercept enemy units that got too close and the Kai Gun squad proved to be a real nuisance for the Orks. In hindsight I was happy that my selections for this army were beginning to work out, but there were still a few problems. I should have deployed the Basilisk right out on the flank, far away from the main fight, not behind my main battlegroup as I did. I could have changed my Minor victory into a Major one if the Kai Gun squad had had two extra men, as it would have been over half strength at the end of the game and gained me an extra table quarter.

### WHAT'S ON THE HORIZON

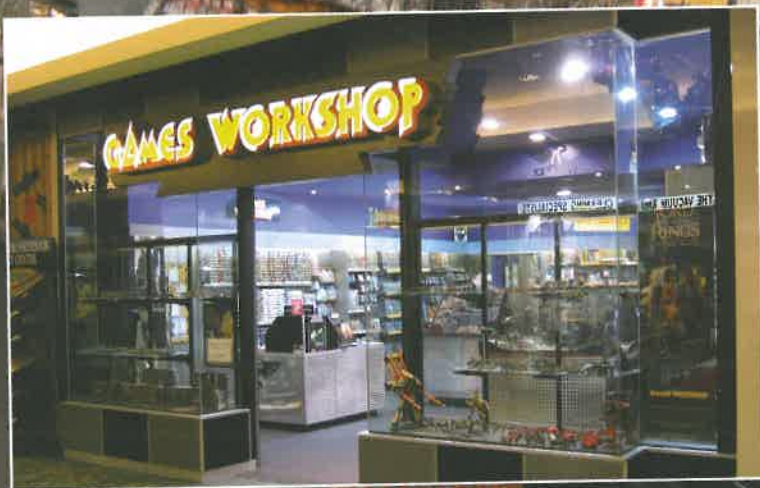
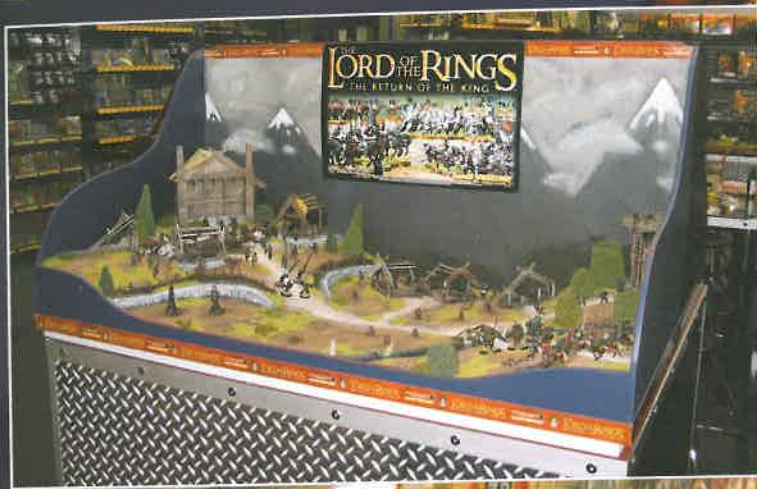
I've got to keep on practising now the army is finished. I'm happy with the learning experience, not only am I having fun and learning about a new army, but I'm also becoming a much better player.

I'm already thinking about expanding the army to 1,500 points (Grand Tournament size). So far I have decided to include Obliterators, but I haven't thought of any nice conversions yet. What I have thought of though is a really heavily converted daemonic Vindicator, a centrepiece for the army that will also be a scary prospect for my opponents. This is all in the future though, before then I have my first Conflict to fight in. I'll let you know how I get on later.



After three months work, the Iron Warriors are all finished and ready for war.







# GAMES WORKSHOP

## HOBBY CENTRES

### AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

#### • WODEN:

Shop LG68C Woden Plaza  
Phillip ACT 2606  
(02) 6232 5231

### NEW SOUTH WALES

#### • CASTLE HILL:

Shop 495 Castle Towers  
Castle Hill NSW 2154  
(02) 9899 8188

#### • CHATSWOOD:

Shop 302 Westfield Shoppingtown  
Chatswood NSW 2067  
(02) 9415 3968

#### • EASTGARDENS:

Shop 318, Westfield Shoppingtown  
Pagewood NSW 2065  
(02) 9315 5571

#### • HORMSBY:

Shop 3051, Westfield Shoppingtown  
Hornsby NSW 2077  
(02) 9476 0798

#### • MIRANDA:

Shop 1048a Westfield Shoppingtown  
Miranda NSW 2228  
(02) 9526 1966

#### • NEWCASTLE:

197 Hunter Street  
Newcastle NSW 2300  
(02) 4926 2311

#### • PARRAMATTA:

Shop 24, 222 Church Street  
(Horwood Place)  
Parramatta NSW 2150  
(02) 9689 1638

#### • STONEY BATTLE BUNKER:

222 Clarence Street  
Sydney CBD NSW 2001  
(02) 9267 6020

#### • WOLLONGONG:

Shop 2, 201 Crown Street (Globe Lane)  
Wollongong NSW 2500  
(02) 4225 8064

### NEW ZEALAND

#### • AUCKLAND:

Shop 4 280 Queen Street  
Auckland New Zealand  
(09) 302 0279

#### • ST. LUKES:

Shop S208 Westfields, St Lukes Square  
Auckland New Zealand  
(09) 815 3547

#### • WELLINGTON:

Shop 13 Courtenay Central,  
80 Courtenay Place  
Wellington New Zealand  
(04) 382 9532

### QUEENSLAND

#### • BRISBANE:

Shop 3, Level 1, Queen Adelaide  
Building, Queen Street Mall  
Brisbane QLD 4000  
(07) 3831 3566

#### • CARINDALE:

Westfield Shoppingtown Carindale  
(cnr of Creek and Old Cleveland Roads)  
Carindale QLD 4152  
(07) 3398 3470

#### • CHERMSIDE:

Shop 251B Westfield Shoppingtown  
(cnr of Gympie and Hamilton Streets)  
Chermside QLD 4032  
(07) 3350 5896

#### • MT GRAVATT:

Shop 2005 Upper Level  
Garden City Shopping Centre  
Upper Mount Gravatt QLD 4122  
(07) 3343 1864

### SOUTH AUSTRALIA

#### • ADELAIDE:

Shop 25 Citi Centre Arcade  
145 Rundle Mall, Adelaide SA 5000  
(08) 8232 7611

#### • MARIION:

Shop 2048 Westfield Shoppingtown  
Oaklands Park SA 5046  
(08) 8298 2811

#### • TEA TREE PLAZA:

Shop 2 Westfield Shoppingtown  
Tea Tree Plaza, Modbury SA 5092  
(08) 8265 4680

### VICTORIA

#### • CHADSTONE:

Shop B78, Chadstone Shopping Centre  
1341 Dandenong Road  
Chadstone VIC 3148  
(03) 9569 5728

#### THURSDAY VETERANS NIGHT

#### • HIGHPOINT:

Shop 1108 Level 1  
Highpoint Shopping Centre  
Maribyrnong VIC 3032  
(03) 9317 0845

#### • MELBOURNE:

Shop G30/31 Centrepoin Mall  
283-297 Bourke Street  
Melbourne VIC 3000  
(03) 9654 7086  
*Closed Sundays*

#### • NORTHLAND:

Shop K42, Northland Shopping Centre  
Murray Road, Preston VIC 3072  
(03) 9471 2506

#### • RINGWOOD:

Shop L44A Eastlands Shopping Centre  
Ringwood VIC 3134  
(03) 9876 0099

### WESTERN AUSTRALIA

#### • MORLEY:

Shop 1095 Westfield Shoppingtown  
Galleria, Morley WA 6062  
(08) 9375 6294

#### • PERTH:

Shop 41, Carillon City, Perth WA 6000  
(08) 9322 3895

**Shops with their name in RED have Games Night every Thursday. Those with their names in White have their Games Night on Fridays.**



# GAMES WORKSHOP

## HOBBY CENTRE OCTOBER EVENTS



Play test the Revised Warhammer 40,000 rules during October

### Games Workshop Hobby Centres

All throughout October your local Hobby Centre will be running all sorts of exciting gaming, painting and modelling activities. Expert Staff are on hand to help you with any hobby skills you want to learn or hints and tips on gaming.

The month of October also sees Hobby Centres celebrating the release of the **Revised Warhammer 40,000 Rulebook** with a range of activities. If you are a veteran Warhammer 40,000 gamer you can ask our staff for advice on how the revised rules will affect your army. If you are new to playing battles in the grim, far future then now is the perfect time for you to visit a Hobby Centre for an exciting playtest with one of our knowledgeable staff.

During October most Hobby Centres will be running loads of local events as well as preparing for Games Day 2004 so check out these other exciting events coming soon in November!

# STRIKEBACK

Complete a "Tour of Duty" in the Warhammer 40,000 Strikeback campaign.

### STRIKEBACK NARRATIVE CAMPAIGN



#### EPISODE III

### I'M BURNING DOWN YOUR HOUSE

There is only one objective in war: **kill your enemy, crush him utterly and take away his means of mount further resistance.**

The control of this sector is crucial as the early conclusion of this war is a **crucial vital** (crucial line of transport in and from outlying areas of the city. The enemy must be sought out and eliminated, no prisoners, no mercy.

**STANDARD MISSION**

**OBJECTIVE ANNIHILATION**

At the end of the mission, the player must have destroyed the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

**SCENARIO SPECIAL RULES**

**1. Objective:** Destroy the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

**2. Rules:** The player must have destroyed the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

#### EPISODE IV

### HELL WAS MORE FUN

Both sides have been attempting to establish fortified positions, probe the enemy's strength and prepare for a major attack. The last night of the war has been trying to do it now for the last ten days. Constant attack and counter-attack has almost worn the enemy out and now your leader has decided to order all standing troops to **regain the losses.**

**STANDARD MISSION**

**OBJECTIVE: RECON**

At the end of the mission, the player must have reconnoitered the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

**SCENARIO SPECIAL RULES**

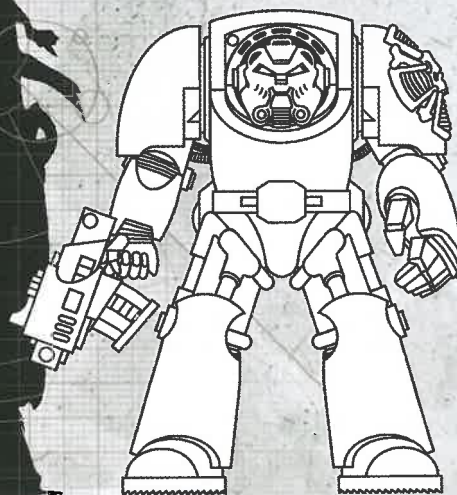
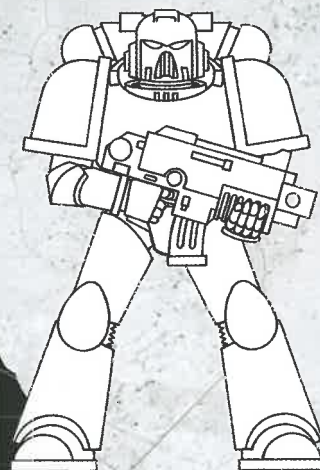
**1. Objective:** Reconnoiter the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

**2. Rules:** The player must have reconnoitered the enemy's main base and all other objectives.

This narrative campaign features many of the new missions from the revised Warhammer 40,000 Rulebook



COMING SOON IN NOVEMBER...

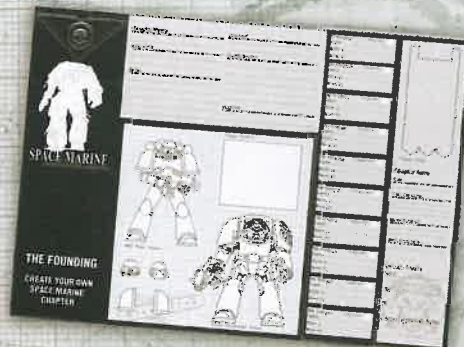


# SPACE MARINE

## CHAPTER FOUNDING COMPETITION

**WARHAMMER**  
40,000

Ask staff for an exclusive chapter  
founding entry form!







## WHAT IS WARHAMMER CHRONICLES?

Warhammer Chronicles takes a look at the Warhammer Fantasy Battle game and its rules, introducing new scenarios, rules and army list entries of all types, frequently stolen from army books in progress here at the Studio, as well as providing occasional Question and Answer forums. It also acts as a forum for dedicated players of Warhammer who have produced inspired, well thought out and just plain brilliant additions to the game. If you've got something good for Warhammer Chronicles then write to us at the address given here.

Note: Please don't include rules queries etc, with your letters, as the volume of mail means that in most cases we won't be able to send individual replies.

Warhammer Chronicles  
Games Workshop  
Willow Road, Lenton  
Nottingham  
NG7 2WS, UK

# WARHAMMER CHRONICLES

Since the release of the Storm of Chaos book, we've had a number of questions appear in our e-mail inboxes, received many letters and had people stopping us in corridors to ask rules questions, so we thought it was high time for a Q+A. The following questions, answered by Anthony Reynolds, replace any that have been seen elsewhere before – as a result a couple of the answers may have changed from the previous Question & Answer section that featured on the website.

## General questions

**Q: Will the Storm of Chaos army lists be official even after the campaign is over?**

**A: Yes.**

**Q: If a unit included in a variant list has no selection restrictions listed (ie, no 0-1 where there is a 0-1 in the regular army list), should the criteria default to the original army book? So, for example, should Knights of the Realm be 1+ in an Errantry list, White Wolves be a 0-1 choice, and Von Carstein Vampire Lords be 0-1?**

**A:** If there are no selection restrictions in the variant army list, that means there are no restrictions on that unit type in the variant list. So, Knights of the Realm are not a 1+ choice, multiple units of White Wolves ARE allowed in a Middenheim army list, and Von Carstein Vampire Lords are NOT 0-1 (it's a bad idea to fight in Sylvania). Any exceptions to this are noted in the relevant army list below.

**Q: Some units in army books have notes that allow two units to be chosen as a single unit choice. For example, two High Elf Bolt Throwers may be taken as a single Rare choice in a normal High Elf army. Do these apply in the Storm of Chaos lists, as they are generally not marked as such.**

**A:** Players should refer to the army book unit entries for everything but selection restrictions (as noted above) – in this case that means that if they are allowed more than one unit as a single choice in the army book, then they are allowed that in the variant list as well.

So, two Bolt Throwers in a Sea Patrol list may be chosen as a single choice, two Spear Chukkas chosen as a single Special choice in Grimgor's 'Ard Boyz and two Chaos Spawn chosen as a single Rare choice in Archaon's Hordes, etc.

**Q: If a unit included in a variant list does not have special rules noted, but they do have special rules in their army book, should we default to the army**

**book? For example, do Slayers in the Slayer list have Relentless?**

**A:** Yes, unless stated otherwise, the relevant special rules in army books are always used. So, Dwarf Slayers in a Slayer army ARE Relentless, Unbreakable etc, even though it is not noted as such.

**Q: Can new units, magic items, skills etc that appear in these Storm of Chaos lists be used in regular armies of the relevant type?**

**A:** Only where specifically stated (such as the Dark Elf magic items, the Hellcannon and Malakai Makaisson's Goblin-hewer).

## Archaon's Horde

**Q: Warriors of Chaos get free upgrades if they number 16 or more models in a unit. Does this apply to Chosen units also?**

**A:** Yes, as they are still Warriors of Chaos.

**Q: In a regular Mortal Chaos army, the Hellcannon can be taken as a 0-1 Rare choice and takes up 2 Rare slots. What are its restrictions for taking Hellcannons in Archaon's Horde?**

**A:** In Archaon's Horde, the 0-1 restriction is removed. They still take up two Rare slots, however.

**Q: Can the Hellcannon fire normally if it moved? Can it Spew Ichor if it moved?**

**A:** War machines cannot move and shoot. However, when the Hellcannon Rampages, it IS allowed to Spew Ichor, as noted in the special rules for the Hellcannon in Storm of Chaos.

**Q: If a Hellcannon charges a friendly unit, should that unit take a Terror test?**

**A:** No.

**Q: If a Hellcannon misfires and a 6 is rolled on the Misfire chart, all wizards on the table are affected. Does this affect Warrior Priests, Tomb Kings and the like?**

**A:** No, only models that are explained as working as wizards – so Liche Priests will be affected, but Warrior Priests and Tomb Kings will not.



number of  
I had people  
as high time  
sids, replace  
the answers  
that featured

vers in the

e, the relevant  
re always  
layer army  
etc, even  
1.

ems, skills  
orm of Cha  
ies of the

ted (such as  
Hellcannon  
lin-hewer).

ee upgrades  
models in  
hosen

rs of Chaos.

s army, the  
s a 0-1 Rare  
slots. What  
ig  
Iorde?  
1 restriction  
two Rare

normally if  
r if it moved  
e and shoot  
on Rampages  
s noted in the  
on in Storm

a friendly  
a Terror test?

and a 6 is  
all wizards  
oes this  
Kings and

xplained as  
Priests will  
s and Tomh



The Empire, with their Kislevite allies, fight in earnest to halt the Legions of Chaos

**Q:** How are Victory Points worked out for the Hellcannon?

**A:** Even though the Hellcannon is a war machine, for such an expensive model that can continue to cause damage after its crew has been destroyed (albeit sometimes to its own side), we decided that Victory Points should be awarded in a slightly different way than normal.

If all the crew are destroyed, the enemy gets half the Victory Points for the unit. If the Hellcannon itself is destroyed, then the enemy gets the full Victory Points for the unit, even if the crew are still living.

### Daemonic Legion

**Q:** Do Flesh Hounds count toward the minimum Core unit requirement, or not, as in the Hordes of Chaos book?

**A:** They do count as a Core unit in a Daemonic Legions list, though not as a Core unit.

**Q:** Belakor has only 5 of the 6 Dark Emissary spells listed as available to him. Is this correct?

**A:** Yes. These are the five spells that he uses in battle.

**Q:** Can the Screammers pulling a Chariot of Tzeentch perform a slashing attack?

**A:** No.

**Q:** In a Daemonic Legion, the spell *Yellow Fire of Transformation* is fairly useless, as the Daemons already get a

**Ward Save.** Should we treat the effects of *Yellow Fire* in the same way as the *Diabolic Splendour* gift? Would this then apply to the *Blasted Standard* as well?

**A:** In both cases (*Yellow Fire* and the *Blasted Standard*), treat them in the same way as *Diabolic Splendour*.

**Q:** Has the 0-1 limitation on Screammers been removed in the Daemonic Legions list?

**A:** Yes.

**Q:** If you give a Daemonic Herald the Mark of Khorne, he gains a 6+ Armour Save. If you also give him the Armour of Khorne, does he get a 4+ Save or is it cumulative, so that he gets a 3+ Save?

**A:** The effects are not cumulative, so a Herald with the Mark of Khorne and the Armour of Khorne will have a 4+ Armour Save.

**Q:** The way that the new Daemonic mounted units are presented represents a combined profile of the rider and the steed. Are they treated as cavalry in other respects?

**A:** Yes. For spells etc. they are treated as normal cavalry, and they are also subject to Killing Blow.

**Q:** Being cavalry, do the new Daemonic mounted units get +1 to their Armour Save for being mounted?

**A:** Mounted Daemonettes, Changebringers, Plague Riders, Pleasureseekers and Bloodcrushers are all cavalry so do gain +1 Armour Save. Note this is already included in the Bloodcrushers' 5+ Armour Save.

### Army of Middenland

**Q:** Do I choose exactly when I want to use the Shard of Skoll? Or is it assumed to always be in use and therefore might be spent at any time?

**A:** You must specify that you are using the Shard of Skoll, so you can choose when to use it.

**Q:** It says that the Hunt Master cannot be singled out by missile fire, yet isn't he quite a bit bigger (a man on a horse) than the rest of the unit (hounds)?

**A:** The Hunt Master cannot be singled out, as he is regarded as the same size (ie, on a cavalry base) as the hounds.

**Q:** The Cloak of Anraheir says that the bearer causes *fear* in Minotaurs. Minotaurs would normally be immune to *fear* as they themselves cause *fear*, so how does that work?

**A:** The bearer of the Cloak causes *fear* to Minotaurs, even though they would normally be immune to *fear*.

**Q:** Although Crossbowmen and Handgunners are Rare units, can they be taken as detachments for Core units?

**A:** No. They can only be taken as parent units, not as detachments at all.



### Grimgor's 'Ardboyz

**Q: Can every Orc unit be Big 'Uns, or should there be at least the same amount of common Orcs like in the O&G army list?**

**A:** You can have as many Big 'Uns in the army as you want without the need to have the same number of 'normal' Orcs. So, if you wanted, you could have an entire army of Big 'Uns!

**Q: Can every Big 'Uns and Black Orcs unit carry a magic standard?**

**A:** Any unit of Black Orcs or Big 'Uns can have a magic banner.

**Q: Grimgor's bodyguards can now be armed with great weapons at no different cost; Is this true also in a regular Orc army?**

**A:** Yes.

**Q: There must be 'more' Warbosses/Bigbosses than Great Shamans/Shamans. Is it 'at least one more' or 'at least the same number'?**

**A:** More means more! There must be MORE Warbosses and Bigbosses in total than there are Great Shamans and Shamans.

**Q: Black Orc characters only take up an extra Hero slot if they are mounted. Do they count as mounted if they are riding a chariot?**

**A:** Yes.

**Q: How big should the Effigy of Gork be?**

**A:** A regiment base (100mm x 75mm) is about the most suitable size. See the pictures on p.60 of the Storm of Chaos book for two examples of Effigies.

**Q: Does Borgut Facebeater count as two Hero slots in Grimgor's 'Ardboyz?**

**A:** No, Borgut only takes up a single Hero slot in Grimgor's 'Ardboyz, though he takes up two slots in a regular Orcs and Goblins army.

### Slayer Army of Karak Kadrin

**Q: Can I take the Goblin-hewer as a Regiment of Renown in a Dogs of War army?**

**A:** Yes. It takes up a Rare unit choice and a Hero slot.

**Q: If the 'Look, Snorri, Trolls!' rule brings Slayers in contact with enemy scouts, do they count as charging? Can the enemy declare a reaction?**

**A:** Yes, and no charge reaction except Hold is permitted.

**Q: Unbreakable is not listed for the Brotherhood of Grimmir. And it's not listed in the Slayer rules of the Dwarf book. Are they Unbreakable?**

**A:** They are still Dwarf Slayers, so have all the special rules of Slayers in the Dwarf Army book. This means that they are Unbreakable.

**Q: Can a Brotherhood of Grimmir unit take a banner with the Master Rune of Grimmir on it?**

**A:** No. Although a Brotherhood of Grimmir unit may take a runic standard worth up to 50 points, only army Battle Standard Bearers may take Master runes.

**Q: Can I give a Slayer character in a normal Dwarf army Slayer skills?**

**A:** No.

**Q: Long Drong's Pirates always attack with their pistols at S4 with armour piercing. Do these attacks also benefit from the Slayer skill?**

**A:** No.

**Q: Can the Wards of Grimmir (Magic Resistance 2 within 6") be used against a spell that targets an 'area' rather than a unit, such as Invocation of Nehek, if part of the area is within range?**  
**A:** Yes, although no specific model is targeted, if the spell would be cast within 6" of the Wards, the Magic Resistance will come into effect.

### Cult of Slaanesh

**Q: Does the Anointed's gift Avatar of Slaanesh allow units of Daemonettes to re-roll Instability checks?**

**A:** No, as units of Daemons do not take Break tests.



The Cult of Slaanesh is a haven for the most depraved minds



of Grimnir unit  
Master Rune of

hood of Grimnir  
andard worth up to  
le Standard  
runes.

haracter in a  
yer skills?

s always attack  
with armour  
cks also benefit

imnir (Magic  
be used against  
area' rather than  
on of Nehek, if  
in range?  
fic model is  
ld be cast within  
c Resistance will

gift Avatar of  
Daemonettes to  
s?  
ns do not take

Q: If an Anointed is upgraded to a  
sorcerer, can he use armour/shields  
and still cast spells?

A: The Anointed may use Chaos armour,  
magic armour and magic shields and cast  
spells, but cannot cast any spells if he  
has any other mundane armour  
(including shields).

Q: Mounted Daemonettes refers to the  
Daemonic Legion description. So they  
are LD9 and have a true 5+ Ward Save?

A: No. They do not benefit from the  
Daemonic Legion bonuses. Mounted  
Daemonettes in the Cult of Slaanesh army  
have a Leadership of 8 and a 5+ Daemonic  
Save rather than a true Ward Save.

Q: If a unit of Cold One Knights has the  
Soul Shadows Standard fails its  
Leadership test and becomes Stupid,  
can it still elect to flee (and then  
automatically rally) when charged?

A: Yes. This is because a unit that becomes  
stupid effectively becomes Immune to  
Psychology, and the standard states that  
units that are Immune to Psychology can  
still use it.

Q: Can a unit that is Frenzied that has  
the Soul Shadows Standard choose to  
flee from a charge?

A: No

### The Army of Sylvania

Q: If a Grave marker scatters into the  
enemy's deployment zone, may I place  
it there?

A: Yes

Q: What happens if there is a unit on  
top of a Grave marker?

A: At least one model being raised must be  
within 6" of the marker, and cannot be  
within 1" of an enemy unit. If this is not  
possible, no unit may be raised. If the  
raised models are being added to an  
existing unit, then at least part of the  
existing unit must be within 6" of the  
grave marker.

Q: When raising a new unit of Dire  
Wolves with the Wolf Lord Bloodline  
power, do you still need to summon 5  
or more models for the spell to work?

A: Yes. Just as when trying to raise any  
other unit, if less than five models are  
created, the spell has failed to work and no  
models are placed on the table.

Q: If a Von Carstein Vampire casts  
Invocation of Nehek, does he raise  
Levy Militia or regular units from the  
Vampire Counts book?

A: In a Von Carstein army, replace Skeleton  
units with Sylvanian Militia units and  
Combine units with Sylvanian Levy units  
when casting Invocation of Nehek. They  
may be armed with any option allowed to

Levy or Militia units (if a Militia unit is  
raised, it would have light armour, and  
could be armed with a spear and shield, a  
halberd and shield, or a crossbow).

Q: The equipment options for Sylvanian  
Militia are a bit unclear. Should it be  
"spear and shield, or halberd and no  
shield" or "shield plus either spear  
or halberd"?

A: Sylvanian Militia come with light armour  
and shield, and either a spear or a halberd.

### Bretonnian Errantry War

Q: Battle Pilgrims are listed as a Rare  
choice. Do they accompany a Grail  
Reliquae?

A: Oops, this entry should read 'Grail  
Reliquae with Battle Pilgrims', just like in  
the Bretonnian armies book.

Q: Is a Battle Standard mandatory in an  
Errantry War army list? Is the army  
allowed the extra Hero slot like normal  
Bretonnian armies?

A: Yes, the Battle Standard is still  
mandatory, and the army is still allowed an  
additional Hero (see pages 64 and 65 of  
the Bretonnian Army book for details).

Q: Are Pegasus Knights still a 0-1  
choice?

A: Yes, they are still a 0-1 choice unless the  
general is mounted on a Royal Pegasus.

### Skaven Clan Eshin

Q: The rules for Under Cover of  
Darkness say that "You cannot shoot,  
charge, or cast spells at targets you  
cannot see." Can spells that do not  
require LOS still be cast at targets in  
range?

A: Yes. This is a line of sight special rule to  
represent the battle taking place at night –  
if a spell does not require line of sight,  
then it may still be cast.

### High Elf Sea Patrol

Q: Which comes first, the extra round  
of shooting or the Bretonnian's praying  
for the Blessing?

A: The Bretonnian Prayer occurs before the  
Master of the Mists shooting.

Q: A Merwyrm must take an immediate  
Leadership test if it fails a Regeneration  
roll. If there is no Regeneration roll (ie,  
the Merwyrm has been wounded by a  
flaming attack), what happens?

A: A Leadership test is taken if the  
Merwyrm fails a Regeneration roll – if there  
is no Regeneration test, then it cannot be  
failed – so, the Merwyrm does not need to  
test.

Q: Can Ship's Company armed with  
spears fight in 3 ranks like other High  
Elves?

A: Yes. They are still High Elves.

Q: Do units take Panic tests as a result  
of the Master of the Mists round of  
shooting?

A: No.

Q: If two Sea Patrols are fighting each  
other, who gets to shoot first with the  
Master of Mists special rules?

A: Roll a dice to see who shoots first.  
Whoever rolls highest may choose one of  
his units and work out shooting from that  
unit, then the enemy chooses one unit and  
resolves its shooting. Continue to alternate  
shooting units until every unit that is  
allowed to shoot has done so.

Q: Does the Master of the Mists Honour  
and the exemption from the Intrigue at  
Court rule only apply to Sea Lord  
Aislinn? If I am using the Sea Patrol  
army outside of the Storm of Chaos  
campaign, and choose to have the army  
led by a Sea Lord other than Aislinn,  
does he also benefit from the Master of  
the Mists Honour and the exemption  
from the Intrigue at Court rule?

A: The Master of the Mists Honour and the  
exemption from Intrigue at Court applies  
to all Sea Lords. The name of the Sea Lord  
in the Storm of Chaos campaign happens  
to be Aislinn. Also note that Aislinn is not  
considered to be a "special character".

Q: May characters deployed with a unit  
of Sea Guard or Sea Rangers also fire  
during the Master of the Mists special  
round of shooting?

A: Yes.

Q: Can a Sea Lord (or Commodore)  
with the Radiant Gem of Hoeth or  
Loremaster Honour act as a mage for  
purposes of the Summoned from the  
Deep rule?

A: No, the special rule refers only to Storm  
Weavers and Mist Mages.

Q: During the Master of the Mists  
special round of shooting, may shots be  
directed at the flanks of enemy units?

A: No!

### ERRATA

Add to p.94

Special Units 2+ Lothorn Sea Rangers  
(Shadow Warriors)  
Great Eagles

Add to p.94. Insert between second and  
third paragraph under Master of Mists  
special rule.

*"No enemy unit may be shot at a second  
time during this round of shooting, unless  
all enemy units on the table have been  
shot at once. No enemy unit may be shot  
at a third time during this round of  
shooting, unless all enemy units on the  
table have been shot at twice, etc."*



# The Art of Warhammer CLOSE COMBAT

*Tactics for winning Close Combat in Warhammer*



Jeff Leong

Jeff Leong continues his step-by-step look at playing Warhammer. A veteran of several Grand Tournaments, Jeff won most recently with an army consisting

mainly of Chaos Marauders (*a tactica will be forthcoming – Fat Bloke*). This month, he focuses on that most critical, and potentially game-winning, phase of Warhammer – Close Combat.

Jeff: The Close Combat phase is the most action-packed and brutal part of the game. A single good round of fighting can break the spirit of an enemy unit and send it scurrying to the safety of its deployment zone or even rip the heart out of an enemy battle line. But though it is terribly important, it's actually fairly straight forward. You roll to hit, then to wound, and your opponent makes (or hopefully doesn't make) his Armour saves. However, you must keep one thing in mind: combat resolution. While killing your opponent's forces in close combat is

good, combats are won, and your foes eventually beaten, through combat resolution. No matter how tough they are, or how numerous, all it takes is one failed Break test to run your enemies down and wipe them out.

Combat resolution is added up at the end of each round of hand-to-hand combat for each side, as per the chart on page 73 of the Warhammer Rulebook (for a summary of the chart see below). The side which scores the highest combat resolution wins combat and the loser must then take a Break test modified by the difference in the scores.

To enhance your chances of winning the round know your combat resolution before combat starts. Rank bonus and Higher Ground (ie. a hill) are set at the beginning of combat, so you can count them before the fighting even starts. You probably know if either side will have a flank or rear bonus at the end of combat, and you know who starts the combat with a Standard. The Outnumbering bonus can be a bit trickier, but you can estimate which way it might go. The only thing left to consider is the number of Wounds caused in the actual battle, and that's where smart choices can have a real impact on the outcome.

Remember, combat resolution wins combats. So, let's look at ways to ensure that combat resolution turns in your favour.

## THE BEST DEFENCE IS DEFENCE

One of the first things to consider in close combat is the weapon your troops will use. All troops have a hand weapon, such as a club or sword, but some also have a special weapon such as a halberd (which requires two hands to use and adds +1 to a model's Strength) or spear (which only requires one hand and allows an additional rank to attack when not charging). While you may normally opt to use whatever special weapon your unit is armed with, it's not always the best idea. Let combat resolution help you decide.

If your warriors are equipped with a shield, you may want to 'turtle up' by using a hand weapon and shield instead of your special weapon, as a soldier on foot gets an extra +1 to their Armour save when they use a hand weapon and shield together in close combat. This is because they can defend more easily, which can significantly reduce the combat resolution bonus that your opponent gets from killing your troops.





and your foes  
gh combat  
ow tough they  
ill it takes is one  
our enemies  
it.

ded up at the  
nd-to-hand  
per the chart on  
ier Rulebook  
art see below).  
ie highest  
combat and the  
reak test  
ce in the scores.

s of winning the  
it resolution  
nk bonus and  
l) are set at the  
you can count  
even starts. You  
side will have a  
e end of  
who starts the

The  
n be a bit  
mate which way  
ng left to  
of Wounds  
tle, and that's  
an have a real  
ie.

at resolution  
, let's look at  
at combat  
n your favour.

## DEFENCE

E  
things to  
e combat is the  
ps will use. All  
weapon, such as  
ome also have a  
i halberd (which  
e and adds +1  
r spear (which  
nd allows an  
when not  
y normally opt  
weapon your  
ot always the  
olution help

pped with a  
'turtle up' by  
d shield instead  
as a soldier on  
their Armour  
nd weapon and  
combat. This is  
more easily,  
educe the  
s that your  
ng your troops.



A unit of Reiksguard Knights crash headlong into a wall of Dark Elf Spearmen.

Diagram 11

Empire Knights

M S C

M S C

Dark Elf Spearmen

# DARK ELVES VS EMPIRE KNIGHTS

## BASIC COMBAT RESOLUTION

In the example above (Diagram 11), a unit of six Empire Knights with full command (Champion, Standard, and Musician) have charged a unit of 20 Dark Elf Spearmen with full command. The Empire Knights can be certain of the bonus for their Standard Bearer, and so start with a combat resolution of 1. The Dark Elves, on the other hand, can be certain that they will receive a bonus of +1 for each of their ranks (a total of +3 for three ranks of at least four models in width behind the first) and a further +1 for their Standard Bearer, and so begins the battle with a total combat resolution of 4. It is also probable that the Dark Elves will outnumber the Empire unit, even after combat, which gives the Dark Elves an additional +1. With a starting Unit Strength of 20 versus the Knights' Unit Strength of 12 (each cavalry model has a Unit Strength of 2), the Dark Elves can be confident that the Knights will not outnumber them at the end of combat, as the Knights would have to kill 9 Dark Elves to do so. So, we can be fairly sure, barring some outrageous dice rolls, that the Dark Elves start with a combat resolution of +5 versus the Empire Knights' +1. This leaves the Empire Knights needing to kill 4 Dark Elves to tie the combat.

## SPEARS AND LANCES

The Dark Elf Spearmen (with their Strength of 3) will be hard pressed to cause a wound against the Empire Knights (with their 1+ Armour save), and so must limit the casualties caused by the charging Knights to win the combat. Choice of weaponry can make that difference. In this example, the Knights hit four times. With the Strength bonus from their lances, they hit at Strength 5, and every hit wounds. Their Warhorses hit another three times and, with Strength 3, wound twice. Now, the Dark Elves must make four Armour saves at -2 (due to the Knights' Strength 5) and two Armour saves at no modifier (since the Warhorses are only Strength 3).

If the Dark Elves use their spears, they cannot save the Wounds caused by the Knights, as their 5+ save (for light armour and shield) is cancelled by the -2 modifier. They can only save the two wounds from the horses on a 5+. Only one of these Wounds is saved, and five Dark Elves die. The Dark Elves started with a combat resolution of +5 versus +1 for the Empire Knights. As the remaining Dark Elves are unable to unhorse a 1+ Armour save Knight, they now lose by one, since the 5 Wounds caused by the Knights puts their combat resolution score above that of the Dark Elves.

## HAND WEAPON AND SHIELD

In an alternative scenario, the Dark Elves use their hand weapon and shields, increasing their Armour save to 4+, and save one of the lance hits (on a 6+) and one of the Wounds from the horses (on a 4+). Without causing a Wound, the Dark Elves tie with the Empire Knights and remain locked in combat. The Empire Knights, having spent their charge, will struggle to win combat next round without the +2 Strength bonus for their lances.

Remember, you must continue to use a weapon chosen throughout the duration of a combat. Should you decide to use hand weapon and shield on the first turn of combat, you must use them until that combat is over – you cannot switch back to spears. It's a tradeoff. If you use your hand weapon instead of a special weapon you increase your Armour save but reduce either your Attacks (foregoing the additional rank with spears), or additional Strength (from a halberd or great weapon). In this example, the Dark Elves had little chance of wounding the Knights, so the tradeoff was worthwhile. This will not always be the case, however. Just remember that timely reduction of enemy combat resolution can win you the battle just as surely as causing Wounds.



## CLOSE COMBAT RESULT BONUSES

Bonus	Situation
+1	Extra Rank
+1	Outnumber Enemy
+1	Standard
+1	High Ground
+1	Flank Attack
+2	Rear Attack
+1	Overkill

### I'VE GOT TO SEE A MAN ABOUT A HORSE

It is sometimes better to have your Champion or character retired to the back rank of your unit than to accept a challenge. If you refuse a challenge, your opponent may select one of your characters and move him to the back rank of your unit. In a challenge your opponent can receive a total combat resolution bonus equal to the remaining Wounds of your character plus 5 for Overkill (it's disheartening for your troops to watch their leader get chopped to ribbons). Consider this choice carefully. It's not always about keeping your character or Champion alive. With thought, sacrificing a character can often work to limit your opponent's combat resolution.

Some characters, such as Crom the Conqueror, have special abilities in a challenge. Crom's ability allows him to take another Attack for each of his initial Attacks that successfully wound (before Armour saves). This means that he can have significantly more Attacks than the 5 Attacks on his profile (or 6 with his additional hand weapon) when he is fighting in a challenge.

Some characters carry weapons that can cause multiple Wounds, such as the Rending Sword (which multiplies each unsaved Wound to D3 Wounds), meaning that a single Wound might cause double or triple the amount of damage once it gets through your armour. Let's say an Aspiring Champion of Chaos with the Rending Sword challenges the Champion of an Empire Spearman unit. In a challenge, the Aspiring Champion can potentially cause 9 Wounds! (3 Attacks at D3 Wounds each), six of which would count towards combat resolution. If the Empire Champion declines the challenge, the most the Aspiring Champion could cause would be 3 Wounds, again, a swing of three points in combat resolution in favour of the Spearman. Any Wounds in excess of their starting value on rank-and-file troops are not counted towards combat resolution, but if you accept a challenge against such a monster, you will quickly find you have a significant deficit in combat resolution if your Champion is overkilled.

Stay focused on combat resolution, and you can't go far wrong. Don't let your Champion be foolish in the name of bravery – remember what they say about he who fights and runs away...

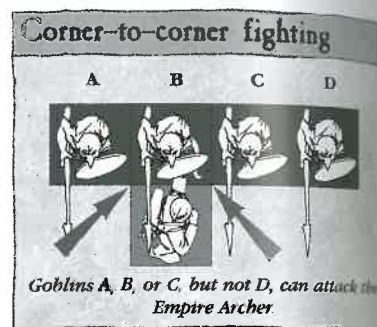
### YOU CAN'T HURT ME... OUCH!

Whether they are heroic warriors, dreaded villains or powerful wizards, characters rule the battlefields of the Warhammer world. However, while they can potentially tip the balance of the fight in your favour, they are not as invulnerable as they may first appear. It's true that Combat Characters can cause a disproportionate number of the Wounds in a fight, as their greater number of Attacks combined with their higher Weapon Skill and Strength allows them to kill many enemies. Even Champions kill more than the other fighters in their unit. In many cases, however, these characters aren't that much harder to kill than the troops

beside them, and it's a sweet victory when your lowly troopers bring down an enemy hero.

Remember that a trooper can target any enemies in base contact with him, including corner-to-corner contact (see Diagram 1.3 below). This means that two to three rank-and-file soldiers will usually be in contact with a character or Champion and are allowed to direct their Attacks at him. Outside a challenge, no extra Wounds will be counted towards combat resolution, but it's often worth taking the risk to remove a powerful character. Here are some things that you should consider when deciding if you want to attack them.

Diagram 1.3



**Unit Champion:** This guy is just as easy to kill as any other member of his unit, if you remember to allocate Attacks against him. In combat, I will always allocate one of my Attacks against the unit Champion, because it's a no-lose situation. If I miss him, I would have missed him anyway, but if I am able to kill him, it hurts my opponent that much more.

**Wizards:** Wizards are also an easy target. They normally have the same Weapon Skill as the basic troops (making them just as easy to hit) and no armour. This combination means that it is easier to cause Wounds against a wizard than

## CROM VS EMPIRE ELECTOR COUNT

In this example, (Diagram 1.2) Crom's Chaos Warriors have engaged the Empire Elector Count's unit of Swordsmen. The Empire General accepts Crom's challenge with the unit Champion. Crom continues to rain down Attacks on him until he is wounded more than six times (the maximum that counts for Overkill – initial Wounds + 5), and counts all 6 Wounds towards combat resolution for the Chaos Warriors. However, had the

Empire player refused to accept the challenge, the Chaos player would have retired the Elector Count (remember, if you refuse the challenge, your opponent picks who to retire) to the back of the unit and Crom would not have benefited from the extra Attacks he gets in a challenge. He would have probably only killed three or four Swordsmen – a two to three point swing in combat resolution in the Swordsmen's favour.

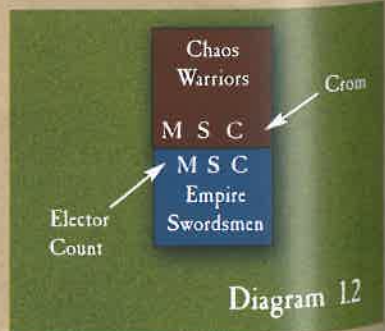


Diagram 1.2



sweet victory  
ers bring down

er can target any  
t with him,  
ner contact (see  
is means that  
ile soldiers will  
th a character or  
ved to direct  
tside a challenge,  
e counted  
ion, but it's often  
remove a  
e are some  
consider when  
attack them.

## fighting

C D



st D, can attack the  
ber.

uy is just as easy  
ber of his unit,  
cate Attacks  
I will always  
ks against the  
e it's a no-lose  
I would have  
if I am able to  
onent that

so an easy target  
same Weapon  
(making them  
to armour. This  
it is easier to  
wizard than

Diagram 12

against normal rank-and-file troopers, who are usually armoured. I generally allocate as many attacks as possible against a wizard, up to the number of wounds he has remaining. Again, it's a close situation. He isn't any harder to hit or wound, plus he has no armour to save him. Removing a wizard reduces the enemy's Magic phase while allowing your magic to be more effective – a double benefit.

**Combat Characters:** These guys are the fighters, the ones who can really cause some serious damage. However, they are often quite susceptible to damage themselves. While characters usually have access to a wide range of protective items, not all players take advantage of them. In addition, most Combat Characters do not have significantly higher Weapon Skill than their base troops (their WS is usually two to three points higher). This means that they are

not usually much harder to hit than the basic troops around them.

There are times it may not be a good idea to allocate Attacks against Combat Characters, but it is always worth considering. Take a moment to figure out if it's harder to hit the character than it would be to hit a rank-and-file model, determine if he has a better Armour save, and then make the decision. Even if it turns out to be a bit risky, it can have a significant reward.

**Battle Standard Bearers:** Essentially a subset of Combat Characters, the Battle Standard Bearer is often less protected than his core combat peers (a Battle Standard Bearer cannot take a shield). Additionally, if he carries a magic banner he won't be able to use any protective magic items. Unlike unit Standards, no one can pick up the Battle Standard, should it be slain, and the ability to

reroll failed Break tests within 12" will be gone. This makes the Battle Standard Bearer a valuable target in Close Combat – most scenarios give you an additional 100 Victory Points for killing it. I almost always make the enemy Battle Standard Bearer a high priority in any combat.

## THE FINAL THRUST

Close Combat is the deciding factor in most games of Warhammer. There is nothing more enjoyable than a game that comes down to the final epic confrontation, between the players' best units, as the battle is decided. By keeping combat resolution foremost in your mind, you can make sure that those dice favour you and that your forces stand victorious at the end of the day, as the dust of battle clears. Next month, we'll take a look at the Shooting phase, and see how to make it work for you. Until then, may your arm be strong and your sword sharp.

## CHAOS WARRIORS VS EMPIRE KNIGHTS

In this example, (see Diagram 1.4 below) an Exalted Champion of Chaos with a great weapon is part of a unit of 16 Chaos Warriors with full command that are charged by six Empire Inner Circle Knights. Since the Chaos Warriors are using hand weapons and shields, they have an Armour save of 3+ (heavy armour, hand weapon and shield) in close combat versus the 4+ Armour save the Exalted Champion gains from his Chaos Armour. The Chaos Warriors' WS of 5 means that the Empire Knights (with a WS of 4) will only hit them on a 4+, which is exactly the same score it will take to hit the Exalted Champion, even with his WS of 7 (it takes a WS more than twice that of the attacker to require a 5+ to hit). In this case, it is obviously preferable to allocate as many Attacks as possible to the Exalted Champion – he is hit just as easily as the Chaos Warriors around him, and has a worse Armour save to boot! Not to mention that the chance to kill him before he swings that great weapon is just too good to pass up.



Diagram 1.4

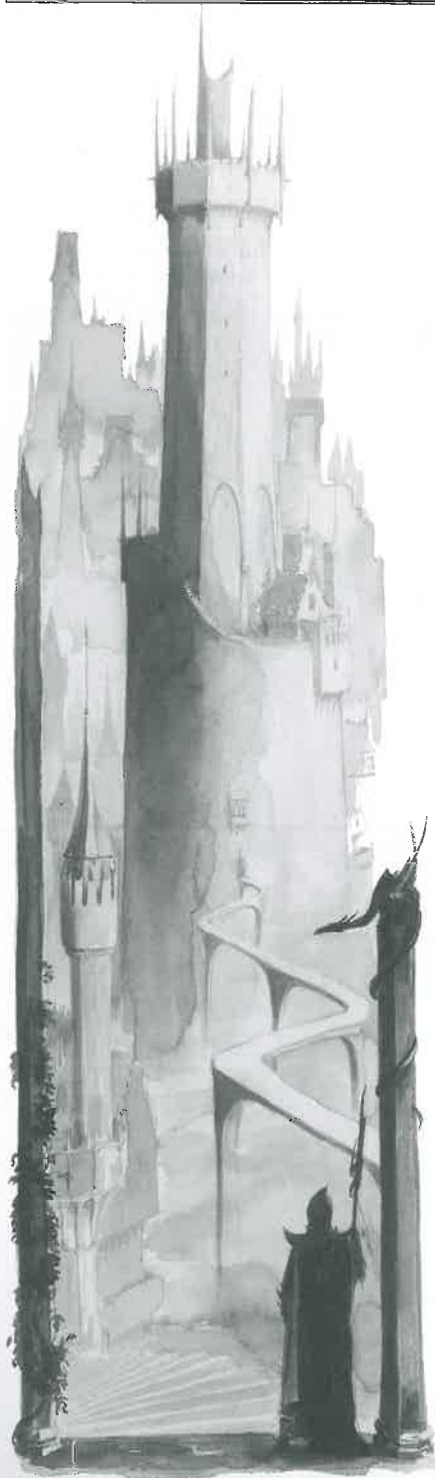


Chaos Warriors led by an Exalted Champion meet the charge of the Imperial Knights.



# MENGIL'S MANFLAYERS

*A new Dark Elf Regiment of Renown by Anthony Reynolds*



Mengil Manhide is the sadistic, cannibalistic leader of a vicious group of Dark Elves known throughout the Old World as the Manflayers. They travel unseen across the lands under the cover of darkness, selling their savage skills to the highest bidder and adorning themselves with the flayed flesh of those they slaughter in battle. Ant Reynolds delves into the grim history of this black-hearted individual...

Even amongst the Dark Elves of Naggaroth, a nation renowned for its cruelty, ruthlessness and sadistic tendencies, Mengil of Clar Karond is particularly noted for his bloodthirsty nature. Such is his cunning and his gleefully murderous behaviour that many amongst the Dark Elves regard him as an unhinged killer. While most Dark Elves would happily slit the throat of any who got in their way in order to further their own political aims or gain more personal power so long as they could get away with it, Mengil kills for the fun of it, without care or thought of the consequences. On more than one occasion, he has slain allies merely on a whim, and many believe he

Captain Alessandro fumbled to draw his pistol as he scrambled painfully backwards through the mud of the battlefield. His left leg was useless – two small, black crossbow bolts protruded from his bloodied thigh. His men were scattered around him, mostly dead or dying. The battle against the cursed rat-beasts had been going well, the cowardly things fleeing from the Knights of the Rose, Luccini's famed heavy cavalry, and Alessandro's crossbowmen had killed hundreds with their disciplined volleys.

Then his men had started dying. In confusion, Alessandro had ordered his men to turn to face this new threat, but none could be seen. Still more of his men fell to the unnervingly accurate bolts. Within moments, his regiment was scattering in confusion, and Alessandro himself fell to the ground, two bolts punching through the mail of his thigh. That was when the Dark Elves made their appearance, running from the dark copse of tall trees to hack at the Tilean mercenaries with massive, barbed blades. The darkness continued to swirl around them, as if it was reluctant to relinquish them from its touch. Already the butchery had begun, as the cursed began ripping the skin from the bodies of the mercenary captain's men. His eyes were

wide as a tall, elegant figure closed on him, and he raised his pistol in a shaking hand. The Dark Elf tutted, shaking his head with a regretful sigh. The dark figure raised its arm and a small black bolt punched through Alessandro's bicep, forcing him to drop his pistol. Tall and pale, his grace and noble bearing belied the madness in his black eyes, eyes that held the promise of pain. He wore a bloody skin over his shoulder as a cloak, and Alessandro started when he recognised a tattoo on the skin as belonging to his employer.

The Dark Elf closed on the Tilean captain, drawing a large, viciously barbed knife from its scabbard.

"Don't worry. Your skin will soon be joining that of your benefactor," said Mengil, waving the knife menacingly.

Alessandro fumbled at his belt, pulling out a bulging coin pouch, and offered it up to his killer. The Dark Elf merely chuckled.

"It's not about the money, friend," he said, the cruel smile on his face exposing sharpened teeth. "I do this because I enjoy it."

Mengil's eyes gleamed in the darkness as he slashed the knife across the Tilean's throat, and began to methodically and expertly draw the skin from his body.



ds

ark Elves of  
renowned for  
s and sadistic  
r Karond is  
bloodthirsty  
ng and his  
viour that many  
egard him as an  
ost Dark Elves  
oat of any who  
to further their  
a more personal  
uld get away with  
of it, without  
nsequences. On  
he has slain allies  
any believe he

ure closed on  
stol in a  
Elf tutted,  
regretful sigh  
s arm and a  
through  
3 him to drop  
his grace and  
madness in his  
the promise of  
skin over his  
Alessandro  
d a tattoo on  
his employer  
on the Tilean  
iciously barbed

kin will soon be  
factor," said  
menacingly  
t his belt.  
a pouch, and  
t. The Dark Elf  
oney, friend," he  
his face exposing  
s because I

l in the  
e knife across  
egan to  
draw the skin



*Mengil's Manflyers stalk their prey through Drakwald Forest*

has only a tenuous grip on his sanity. He is seen as dangerously unpredictable, and regarded with suspicion and distrust by other Dark Elves.

Mengil's father, Kraal the Heart eater, was a cruel and powerful noble lord of Clar Karond, whose ruthless reputation ensured that none would dare to oppose him. He frequently set his sons tasks and trials as they were raised in order to weed out those he deemed too weak to carry his bloodline, and to test their loyalty to him. Those that failed his cruel tasks were slain without mercy, their hearts cut out and offered to Khaine. His youngest son Mengil was no exception, and he was routinely beaten and forced to fight his older brothers. In one such test, Kraal released a

human captive, a powerful young Norseman, into the Black Forests outside of the dark city, giving the warrior weapons and shield. The young Mengil was sent to hunt this human, and only once he returned with evidence of the kill would he be allowed back into the city. Through the icy wilderness Mengil tracked his quarry, eventually coming face to face with the Norseman. His speed and skill with the blade was enough to overcome his larger and more powerful foe, and he rejoiced in the thrill of the kill, smeared blood across his face and he drank deeply from the powerful heart of his fallen foe, before skinning the Norseman and eating his flesh. While in the wilds, he sharpened his teeth to points, making him look

particularly fearsome. Walking back into Clar Karond, Mengil wore the bloodied skin as a cloak, earning him the respect of his father and the honorific title 'Manhide'.

The favouritism that Kraal showed for his youngest and most vicious of sons was regarded jealously by his brothers, and on more than one occasion Mengil was forced to fight for his life against his brethren, killing two of his murderous siblings in one night. He ripped the skin from their bodies, and had their bloodied, skinless corpses delivered to his one remaining brother as a warning.

When he was old enough, Mengil joined the ranks of the Corsairs of Clar Karond, and his rapid rise was tarnished only by his increasing viciousness and



unpredictability. Where his superiors would have him conduct lightning quick raids, slaughtering any defenders and retreating with captives before a strong defence could be formed to counter-attack, Mengil would more often than not stubbornly refuse to retreat and strike at the larger defensive force. While his skill, ferocity and powerful leadership would often ensure that he was victorious, he would generally return with few slaves, for he took perverse pleasure in killing. Even those who gave up their swords, Mengil would slay, rejoicing in the flow of blood, and often continuing to hack and cut at the bodies long after life had left them. He continued his practise of skinning his

defeated foes, and his father's halls in Clar Karond were bedecked with these savage trophies, reaped from all over the world. Nevertheless, this was merely a slight blemish upon his otherwise praiseworthy name, and the fact that he would sometimes turn on an ally and brutally murder him in cold blood was seen more as an eccentricity than a problem.

Within half a century, Mengil was himself leading the majority of raids launched from the Black Ark known as the *Citadel of Spite*. This was once a massive castle that guarded the south-western tip of the now sunken lands of Nagarythe before it was turned into a giant floating fortress by dark magicks. The Dark Lord of

Clar Karond himself gave Mengil the honour of leading these assaults from the front, making him one of the youngest Slave Captains of any Clar Karond Black Ark. Over the next two decades, the *Citadel of Spite* became much hated by the High Elves, synonymous with despair and grief as it routinely raided Ulthuan's coast and shipping lanes, as well as raiding the coasts of Norsca, Bretonnia, Araby and Estalia. Though the Black Ark did not often return with many living slaves once Mengil had done with them, the terror that his brutal raids spread was regarded as pleasing to his superiors.

For a time, the *Citadel of Spite* controlled the entrance to the Tilean Sea, preying upon smugglers, pirates and merchants alike, and routinely slaughtering the villages to the south of Remas and near the pirate-city of Sartosa. While engaged on land on one of these raids, the Black Ark came under attack by swift moving Elven ships from Lothorn, and the Black Ark was forced to retreat to deeper waters. The captain of the Black Ark, who had seen his three predecessors slain in a mad rage by Mengil, was disinclined to return for the vicious warrior, and claimed that he was dead. Mengil and his men were stranded in Tilea. They made their way inland under the cover of darkness, moving into the forests and then into the southern Apuccini Mountains. After a season of preying indiscriminately on passing merchants and their hired guards, Mengil was approached by a wealthy warrior-merchant from Verezzo. He struck a deal with Mengil, and thus began the Dark Elf's new career as a paid killer. He is often used by those who wish to make an example of the target, for Mengil takes savage pleasure in skinning his foes, often leaving the skinless bodies of his victims hanging from trees or impaled on spikes in the ground. For many years, he fought at the side of his old comrade, the renegade Dark Elf known as Ean Hawkbane, until Mengil gutted, skinned and ate him one night after a disagreement.

Throughout the lands of the Old World Mengil has plied his trade, and his Dark Elves, known as the Manflayers, are rightly feared. They are employed as assassins and murderers, and are often used to eliminate rivals. Mengil took to the life as a hired killer with joyous abandon, and has even returned to Naggaroth several times where the Dark Lords readily employ him to eliminate their foes. On one such return to Clar Karond, Mengil repaid the captain of the *Citadel of Spite* for abandoning him those years before, and the story of that unfortunate Dark Elf's demise is still told in dark tales. On occasion, Mengil's Manflayers will take to the field of battle, employed to infiltrate deep into enemy territory to spread terror and confusion.





## MENGIL'S MANFLAYERS

**For Hire:** Any Warhammer army other than Bretonnians, High Elves, Wood Elves and Dwarfs may hire Mengil's Manflayers, as a Special unit choice. Dogs of War and Dark Elf armies (including any Dark Elf variant armies, such as the Cult of Slaanesh) may choose Mengil's Manflayers as a Special unit choice.

**Points:** Mengil and five Manflayers (including a Standard Bearer and a Musician) cost a total of 287 points. This is the minimum sized regiment that you can hire. The size of the unit can be increased by adding additional Manflayers at +19 pts per model, to a maximum of nine additional Manflayers.

	M	WS	BS	S	T	W	I	A	Ld
Mengil	5	6	6	4	3	2	7	3	9
Manflayers	5	4	5	3	3	1	5	1	8

**Weapons:** Hand weapons, repeater crossbows and great weapons. Mengil himself carries a repeater crossbow-pistol instead of a repeater crossbow. All weapons (including their repeater crossbows and the repeater crossbow-pistol) carried by Mengil and his Manflayers are coated in Dark Venom (see page 22 of the Dark Elf Armies book).

**Armour:** Heavy armour

### SPECIAL RULES

**Hate** High Elves, Skirmishers, Flyers, Repeater Crossbow, Banner of Kalad.

#### Flyers

Mengil and his Manflayers are cannibalistic killers that skin their foes and wear the flayed flesh as cloaks.

The regiment may never pursue enemies that they break in close combat – instead, they will flay those that have fallen,

ripping their skin from their flesh. For each enemy unit that they break or wipe out in close combat they gain +100 Victory Points.

#### Repeater crossbow-pistol

Mengil's specially designed crossbow-pistol is a light and flexible weapon, and extremely deadly at close range.

**Maximum range:** 8"

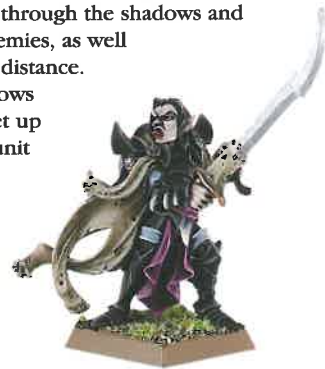
**Strength:** 3

**Rules:** 3 x Multiple Shots. Ignores To Hit penalties for shooting at long range and for moving and shooting.

#### Banner of Kalad

Kalad was one of the black-hearted brothers of Mengil, who showed great natural skill in the manipulation of dark magicks. Such a practise by males is outlawed by order of the Witch King, and Mengil took great delight in skinning his brother alive. He then had the skin attached to his personal standard. Such was Kalad's power, that a nimbus of dark daemon-spirits constantly hovers around his flesh, keeping his spirit-essence alive in torment. These dark spirits form a cloak of perpetual darkness around the banner, allowing Mengil and his Manflayers to move unseen through the shadows and stealthily approach their enemies, as well as being difficult to see at a distance.

The Banner of Kalad allows Mengil's Manflayers to be set up as Scouts. In addition, any unit wishing to target Mengil's Manflayers with shooting attacks suffer -1 to hit. This is increased to -2 if the Manflayers are more than 12" away from the shooters.



Mengil's Manflayers





# PAINTING WORKSHOP



## MANFLAYERS

The Dark Elves harbour some of the most depraved minds that the world of Warhammer has ever seen. Adi Wood takes a look at how Neil Green from the 'Eavy Metal team painted the warped Manflayers.



Mengil Manhide and his Manflayers have been painted in the classic Druchii colour scheme, purple and black. What separates this Regiment of Reknown from other Dark Elves are the robes of flayed skin that the warriors wear.

### Skin

### Metal



- Paint the metal areas with Boltgun Metal.
- Highlight with Chainmail followed by Mithril Silver.



- To paint the skin, apply Tanned Flesh as the basecoat.
- Highlight with Dwarf Flesh followed by Bleached Bone.



### Purple cloth

- Paint the purple cloth with Liche Purple.
- Highlight with equal parts Liche Purple and Skull White.





## Wood



For the basecoat of the wood use Scorching Brown.

Apply an equal parts highlight of Scorching Brown and Bronzed Flesh.

## Sash



Apply Tanned

ed Bone.

Use Shadow Grey to paint the sash.

Apply Space Wolves Grey as the highlight.

## Black armour



Highlight the Chaos Black basecoat with Codex Grey.

Apply Fortress Grey as a final highlight.

## Flayed skin



1 Paint the skin area a basecoat of equal parts Graveyard Earth and Catachan Green.



2 Add equal parts of the original mix with Bleached Bone and apply to the skin as a highlight.



3 To finish off painting the skin, add even more Bleached Bone to the highlight mix and apply as a final highlight. Then water down Catachan Green and apply this all over.



The Manflayer's search for their next victims.





# TO DRINK OR TO TRAMPLE

## CONVERTING CHAOS CENTIGORS

Beasts of Chaos player John Shaffer from the US shares the modifications he made to the new Centigor models to make the unit a little more diverse and unique as well as a few painting tips.



A Dwarfen Warrior mug



I altered the Centigor unit by adding Beastmen plastic shields, gouges and battle damage, accessories, and specially converted command models.



The Centigor bodies come in two parts. Thus, mixing and matching halves added to the variety of poses in the unit.



I added gouges to reflect battle scars and fresh wounds. These cuts are easily to make with a pair of clippers.



I wanted to enhance the armored appearance of my Centigor, so I glued a Kroot shoulder pad to the right arm.



I clipped the bucklers and forearms off of my Centigors. I then took a left hand from the plastic Beastmen sprue, cut it off behind the wristband, and removed the weapon with a hobby knife. I pinned the new forearm into place and then glued the shield onto the hand. You can also wait until after the model and shield are painted before attaching them.

Kroot accessories are great additions to your Centigors. The Kroot sprue has all manner of pouches, knives, sashes, and the like that are appropriately primitive and feral looking. The knives in particular are an easy way to model the throwing axe upgrade available to the unit.



To make the command section of the Centigors stand out from the rest of the herd, I used Beastmen torsos atop of Gorkamorka Mutie Steed bodies. The diseased flesh of the steeds is especially appropriate for Nurgle conversions.



Centigors are renowned drinkers and use pilfered spirits to help them work themselves into a battlefield frenzy. This Centigor standard bearer has a chalice made from a hollowed-out bell taken from the plastic Zombie sprue. The base of the chalice is made from one half of a spiked pick from the plastic Beastmen sprue.



Be creative with your conversions. Try using unconventional parts to achieve interesting results. This Tzeentch Centigor conversion by Rob Marsilli uses an archive Tzeentch Disc as a shield.



# OR PLE NTIGORS

shares the minor  
ls to make the  
ew painting tips.



hance the  
arance of my  
glued a Kroo  
to the right arm.



ors. The Kroo  
l the like that are  
s in particular are  
uitable to the unit.



versions. Try using  
hieve interesting  
itigor conversion  
chive Tzeentch



I painted the base, shield, weapon haft, nails, teeth, and horns with Scorched Brown. I then painted all the metallic areas with Mithril Silver.



I built up the skin tones by adding more Bleached Bone to the skin mix for successive highlights and highlighted the horns and nails with Bleached Bone. I highlighted the Scab Red areas with a little Skull White added to the base color. I then painted the rim of the base Bestial Brown and glued down some static grass.



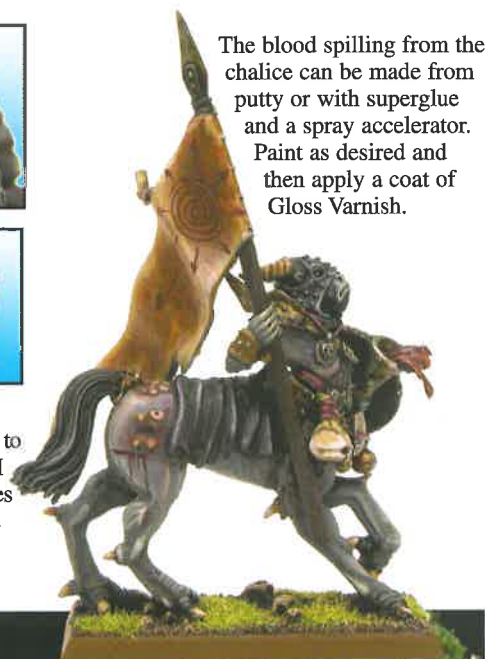
I drybrushed the mane, shield, and weapon haft with Codex Grey and then drybrushed the shield lightly with Bleached Bone. I washed the metallic areas with Chestnut and Dark Green Inks. I next drybrushed the base with Bestial Brown and then Bleached Bone.



I added some details as follows. *Top*, I applied a wash of thinned-down Scab Red to the areas around the gouges. *Bottom Left*, I painted tribal symbols like spirals and runes on the shoulder pads and the flesh. *Bottom Right*, I painted the eyes with tiny dots of Scorpion Green.



I painted the skin Shadow Grey and applied the first highlight to the skin with a 75/25 mix of Shadow Grey and Bubonic Brown. I highlighted the horns and nails with Bestial Brown. I then painted the tabard, necklace, and shield cord with Scab Red.



The blood spilling from the chalice can be made from putty or with superglue and a spray accelerator. Paint as desired and then apply a coat of Gloss Varnish.



A small Centigor herd emerges from the shadows of the forest.



# GAMES WORKSHOP

## STOCKIST LISTING FOR AUSTRALIA & NEW ZEALAND AUSTRALIA

### AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

Canberra	Logical Choice Games	(02) 6248 7722
Tuggeranong	Toy Kingdom	(02) 6284 8844
Fyshwick	Toyworld	(02) 6280 7150

### NEW SOUTH WALES

Albury	Albury Hobby Centre	(02) 6021 1564
Albury	Mind Games	(02) 6041 2448
Armidale	New England Hobbies	(02) 6772 0194
Ballina	Toyworld	(02) 6686 2114
Balmain	Red Toybox	(02) 9810 6133
Batemans Bay	Toyworld	(02) 4472 5673
Bathurst	Toyworld	(02) 6334 3144
Bega	Toy Kingdom	(02) 6492 3028
Blacktown	Unlimited Hobbies	(02) 8814 8700
Bondi Junction	Games Junction	(02) 9389 2599
Bowral	Toyworld	(02) 4861 2038
Braidwood	Braidwood Newsagency	(02) 4842 2410
Broken Hill	Tin Lids	(08) 8087 9333
Brookvale	Games Paradise	(02) 9939 4100
Byron Bay	Toy Kingdom	(02) 6680 8811
Camden	Toyworld	(02) 4655 8383
Campbelltown	Mythic Miniatures & Games	(02) 4628 8224
Charlestown	The Games Shop	(02) 4947 8848
Coffs Harbour	Toyworld	(02) 6652 7898
Cowra	Toyworld	(02) 6342 1407
Dee Why	The Last Redoubt	(02) 9981 3240
Double Bay	Toy Villa Toy Kingdom	(02) 9327 7558
Dubbo	Angus & Robertson	(02) 6884 6262
Erina	Casey's Toyworld	(02) 4365 1131
Forster	Oz From Oz Toys	(02) 6554 8644
Gosford	Wizards of the Central Coast	(02) 4324 0004
Goulburn	Toyworld	(02) 4821 2333
Grenfell	Movie Scene	(02) 6343 2425
Griffith	Focus on Activity	(02) 6962 9174
Gunnedah	J & B -Bearings Centre	(02) 6742 0977
Inverell	Sapphire City Hobbies	(02) 6721 5222
Leeton	Leeton Toy & Hobby	(02) 6953 8275
Lismore	Lismore Online Games Centre	(02) 6621 5432
Lismore	North Coast Hobbies	(02) 6621 3193
Lithgow	Simdra Pet & Hobby Mart	(02) 6352 4422
Macksville	Toyworld	(02) 6568 1594
Maitland	Toyworld	(02) 4933 5034
<b>NEW! Merimbula</b>	<b>Toyworld</b>	<b>(02) 6495 1967</b>
Moruya	Moruya Toys	(02) 4474 4328
Mudgee	Mudgee Bookcase	(02) 6372 3127
Musswellbrook	Games HQ	(02) 6541 0606
Nowra	Uncle Pete's Toys	(02) 4422 8024
Newtown	Modern Times Bookshop	(02) 9519 6191

Orange	Parkers Toy Kingdom	(02) 6362 1486
Penrith	Tin Soldier	(02) 4731 4623
Port Macquarie	Port World of Models	(02) 6584 1223
Raymond Terrace	Toyworld	(02) 4987 6156
Richmond	Toy Barn	(02) 4578 1264
Salamander Bay	Salamander Toys & Hobbies	(02) 4982 0044
Singleton	Singleton Hobbies	(02) 6571 1983
St. Andrews	Pythons Hobbies & Collectibles	(02) 9603 2992
St. Marys	Hobbypro	(02) 9623 1143
Sydney	Games Paradise	(02) 9267 2009
Sydney	Hobbyco	(02) 9221 0666
Sydney	Tin Soldier	(02) 9279 2668
Sydney	Movie Models & Military Miniatures	(02) 9267 3833
Tamworth	Toyworld	(02) 6766 7791
Taree	Mal's Toy Shop	(02) 6551 3613
Top Ryde	Mega Games Trader	(02) 9808 1911
Toronto	House of Beautiful Things	(02) 4950 5855
Tweed Heads	Toyworld	(07) 5524 5090
Wagga	Logical Choice Games	(02) 6921 5505
Warriewood	Treasure Island Toys	(02) 9970 7199
Wyoming	Gosford Hobbies	(02) 4329 2066
Wyong	Tribsa	(02) 4353 0666

### NORTHERN TERRITORY

Alice Springs	Toyworld	(08) 8952 3949
Casuarina	Comics NT	(08) 8945 5633
Darwin City Centre	Enchanted Worlds	(08) 8981 4422
Katherine	Katherine Books	(08) 8972 2530

### QUEENSLAND

Aitkenvale	Games Exchange	(07) 4725 4661
Annerley	Comic Warrior	(07) 3848 7562
Ashgrove	Brisbane On Line Games Centre	(07) 3366 9166
Aspley	Wicked Games	(07) 3863 3085
Brisbane	Mr Toys Queen St Superstore	(07) 3221 4289
Broadbeach	Gameatron	(07) 5538 1711
Browns Plains	Press Start	(07) 3806 7607
Bundaberg	Hallens Hobbies	(07) 4151 7800
Bundaberg	Hobby World	(07) 4152 7286
Capalaba	Toyworld	(07) 3245 6099
Cairns	Toyworld	(07) 4038 2829
Coorparoo	Lets Do Toys	(07) 3847 7066
Emerald	Toyworld	(07) 4982 4477
Gatton	Toyworld	(07) 5462 1477
Gladstone	Toyworld	(07) 4972 4405
Gympie	Toyworld	(07) 5482 5485
Hervey Bay	Adrenalin Bikes & Hobbies	(07) 4124 5644
Indooroopilly	Mr Toys	(07) 3720 1832
Innisfail	Mellicks Centre	(07) 4061 2477
Ipswich	Battlemasters	(07) 3812 0147



Underworld Games	(07) 3812 0298
Toyworld	(07) 3279 0279
Mr Toys Toyworld Superstore	(07) 5444 2377
Angus and Robertson	(07) 5444 2935
B'Mused Puzzles & Games	(07) 4162 3323
Mr Toys Lawnton Superstore	(07) 3881 1250
Mr Toys Logan Hyperdome	(07) 3801 5926
Games Room	(07) 4957 8055
Toywild & Cycles	(07) 5499 9755
Hobby One	(07) 3343 8655
Dunstan & French Book Country	(07) 4749 0400
The Games Shop	(07) 4749 0999
Modelmania	(07) 5428 1331
Toyworld	(07) 5441 3011
Toyworld	(07) 5474 1511
Toyworld	(07) 4921 3121
Toyworld	(07) 4328 4291
Toyworld	(07) 5578 7588
Capricorn Model House	(07) 4922 1507
Toyworld	(07) 5591 6255
Wargames Warehouse	(07) 3352 4344
Mind Games	(07) 3397 0300
Battle Station	(07) 4639 1999
Toyworld	(07) 4728 8895
Toyworld	(07) 3207 8666
Toyworld	(07) 4661 1144

## SOUTH AUSTRALIA

Military Hobbies	(08) 8346 1312
Gawler Hobby Supplies	(08) 8523 3812
Toy Kingdom	(08) 8522 2499
Imagine If	(08) 8272 4282
Model Mania	(08) 8382 4957
Toy Kingdom	(08) 8724 8280
Toy Stampede	(08) 8725 4264
Toyworld	(08) 8532 1111
Zappers Entertainment Centre	(08) 8762 1400
Toyworld	(08) 8642 3277
Toyworld	(08) 8682 4450
Toyworld	(08) 8552 1282
Toyworld	(08) 8645 9838

## TASMANIA

Toyworld	(03) 6431 7244
Toyworld	(03) 6424 8622
Area 52	(03) 6234 2465
Toyworld	(03) 6231 1911
Birchalls	(03) 6331 3011

## VICTORIA

HyperGlobalOmniMegaGames	(03) 5152 2404
Model World	(03) 5331 1642
Mind Games	(03) 5241 7126
Dragons Den	(03) 5441 8212
Games World	(03) 5442 9909
Toy Kingdom	(03) 5441 4667
Toy Kingdom	(03) 5470 5368
Mind Beggars	(03) 9723 2293
Games World	(03) 9793 9955
Games World	(03) 9848 9180
Games World Northland	(03) 9471 2211
Toy Kingdom	(03) 5482 2172
Toyworld	(03) 5480 2913
Toy Kingdom	(03) 5968 6577
Games World	(03) 9796 0322
Games World	(03) 9783 8500
Mind Games	(03) 5222 2133
Tates Toy Kingdom	(03) 5222 4201
Games World	(03) 9434 7733
Mind Games	(03) 9818 8593
Wimmera Hobbies	(03) 5382 2319
Toyworld	(03) 5852 2862
Mind Games	(03) 9509 3174

Melbourne	Mind Games	(03) 9663 4603
Mildura	Toyworld	(03) 5023 4494
Monbulk	Toy Kingdom	(03) 9756 7764
Moorabbin	Military Simulations	(03) 9555 8886
Mornington	Games By The Bay	(03) 5973 6266
Mornington	Toyworld	(03) 5975 4413
Numurkah	Print Grafx	(03) 5862 3222
Sale	Phoenix Centre	(03) 5144 7333
Seymour	Toyworld	(03) 5792 3122
Shepparton	Toyworld	(03) 5831 2835
South Melton	Pitstop Models	(03) 9743 1100
Southland	Games World	(03) 9583 1049
Sunbury	Toyworld	(03) 9740 3233
Swan Hill	Toyworld	(03) 5032 1508
Warragul	Hobby Heaven	(03) 5622 0622
Warrnambool	De Grandi's Sportsgoods	(03) 5562 2325
<b>NEW! Werribee</b>	<b>Wargames Warehouse</b>	<b>(03) 9974 2461</b>
Werribee	Futuristic Games	(03) 9742 4493

## WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Albany	Hobbytronics	(08) 9842 3123
Albany	Toyworld	(08) 9842 2122
Armadale	Toyworld	(08) 9399 7080
Belmont	Games World	(08) 9479 4707
Booragoon	Games World	(08) 9316 0330
Broome	Yuen Wing Store	(08) 9192 1267
Bunbury	Games World	(08) 9721 8487
Bunbury	Youngs Bookshop	(08) 9721 5004
Cannington	Games World	(08) 9358 2355
Claremont	Claremont Toyworld	(08) 9385 1220
Fremantle	Toyworld	(08) 9335 3396
Hillarys	Toyworld	(08) 9402 5044
Kalamunda	Toyworld	(08) 9293 1169
Kalgoorlie	Toyworld	(08) 9021 2041
Karinyup	Games World	(08) 9244 1159
Mandurah	Games World	(08) 9535 3528
Manjimup	Toyworld	(08) 9777 2550
Midland	Toyworld	(08) 9274 5474
Northam	Toyworld	(08) 9622 1630
Perth	City Models	(08) 9321 4339
Perth	Perth Hobby Centre	(08) 9322 3376
Perth	Tactics	(08) 9325 7081
Rockingham	Games World	(08) 9592 5442
Rockingham	Toyworld	(08) 9592 5111
Sawyers Valley	Mundaring Hobby Centre	(08) 9295 6466
Waikiki	Great Western Trains	(08) 9528 2219
Whitfords	Games World	(08) 9403 6622

For stockist enquires, please contact Games Workshop on (02) 9829 6000.





# NEW ZEALAND

## DORCE ISLAND

Auckland	Books & More	(09) 271 1382
Auckland	Modelair (Newmarket)	(09) 520 1236
Auckland	Toyworld Glenfield	(09) 444 7530
Auckland	Historic Games (Newmarket)	(09) 523 5469
Auckland	Wizzkids	(09) 827 4654
Auckland	Toyworld Newmarket	(09) 529 5200
Auckland	Games 'R' Us	(09) 489 2750
Botany Downs	Toy Planet	(09) 272 1990
Browns Bay	Toyworld	(09) 478 9464
Dannevirke	Cawseys Toyworld	(06) 374 6235
Greytown	Regal Enterprises	(06) 304 8446
Hamilton	Frankton Models	(07) 847 5292
Hamilton	Mark One	(07) 839 3728
Hamilton	Toyworld	(07) 839 5552
Hastings	Iconix	0800 426 649
Hastings	Onward Cycles	(06) 878 9993
Henderson	Toy City	(09) 836 5516
Hibiscus Coast	High Performance Models	(09) 427 5878
Howick	Steve's Model Shop	(09) 533 4035
Kerikeri	Scallywags	(09) 407 9376
Kumeu	Art Alley	(09) 412 5525
Lower Hutt	Model Crafts & Hobbies	(04) 570 1881
Lower Hutt	Toyworld Nursery & Cycles	(04) 560 4717
Manukau City	Toyworld	(09) 263 4175
New Market	Urban Warfare	(09) 523 0499

New Plymouth  
Palmerston North  
Palmerston North  
Palmerston North  
Papakura  
Porirua  
Rangiora  
Rotorua  
Taupo  
Tauranga  
Upper Hutt  
Wanganui  
Whangarei

Toyworld  
Heroes for Sale  
L&P Toyworld  
Mr Models  
Steve's Model Shop Ltd  
Toyworld  
Toyworld  
Toyworld  
Toy Chest  
Home Entertainment Centre  
J & N Gifts & Hobbies  
Toyworld Rivercity  
Toyworld

(06) 757 9912  
(06) 356 6779  
(06) 356 9499  
(06) 355 5515  
(09) 299 7512  
(04) 237 6996  
(03) 313 7812  
(07) 348 2446  
(07) 377 3380  
(07) 578 6250  
(04) 528 9456  
(06) 347 9664  
(09) 438 2156

## SOUTH ISLAND

Christchurch  
Christchurch  
Christchurch  
Christchurch  
Christchurch  
Dunedin  
Invercargill  
Invercargill  
Nelson  
Nelson  
Queenstown

Comics Compulsion  
Palms Toyworld  
Toyworld Moorhouse  
Toyworld Northlands  
Toyworld Riccarton  
Toyworld  
Area 51  
Toyworld Invercargill  
Hobby Central (Richmond)  
Toyworld  
Toyworld

(03) 379 7866  
(03) 386 3444  
(03) 374 5151  
(03) 352 5489  
(03) 343 0350  
(03) 477 6614  
(03) 218 4314  
(03) 214 4388  
(03) 544 8078  
(03) 548 0999  
(03) 442 8445

# STOCKIST SPOTLIGHT

## GOSFORD HOBBIES

Gosford Hobbies is located on the central coast of NSW and is popular with all players of games workshop games. The store runs regular scenery making classes on Friday afternoons, how to play classes all day Saturday and tournaments and gaming leagues on Saturday afternoons. The store

gaming tables offer a diverse range of terrain and scenery to fight your battles on.

Glenn and Shane are always on hand to hand out expert help on all aspects of the hobby from painting to gaming. Gosford hobbies is open 7

days a week and carries a large range of Games Workshop product with everything from beginner materials through to veteran product

**Address:** 3 & 4, 4 Brooks Avenue  
Wyoming NSW

**Phone:** (02) 4329 2066





# ASIA STOCKISTS

## SINGAPORE

(06) 757 5912		
(06) 356 6779		
(06) 356 9494	Amities Mart	Tampines (65) 6784 5356
(06) 355 5515	Amities Mart	Serene Centre (65) 6466 4213
(09) 299 7532	Amities Mart	Causeway Point
(04) 237 6954	Amities Mart	Specialist's Shopping Centre (65) 6737 9786
(03) 313 7811	Aircraft	Singapore Post Centre (65) 6743 7054
(07) 348 2448		Midpoint Orchard (65) 6734 3858

## THAILAND

(04) 528 3456	Pratumwan, Bangkok	(66) 2658 0578
(06) 347 9664	Klong Toei, Bangkok	(66) 2260 1570-1
(09) 438 2156	Supreme	Bangkok (66) 2658 0522

## HONG KONG

(03) 379 7846	Wan Chai	(852) 2866 4870
(03) 386 3446	Kowloon	(852) 2954 4951

## KOREA

(03) 352 5489	Seongnam City, Kyeonggi-Do	(82) 31 737 5770
---------------	----------------------------	------------------

## INDONESIA

Fantasy 'N Games	Surabaya	(81) 650 3940
Fantasy 'N Games	Raya Darmo Permai Selatan	(31) 734 0215
Fantasy 'N Games	Kelapa Gading Jakarta Utara	(21) 451 8699
Orgamesmo	Jakarta Barat	(21) 564 4972

## MALAYSIA

Neo Mart	Georgetown	(6) 04 226 2588
Wolfs Game Shop	Petaling Jaya	(6) 037 954 0159
Games Circle	Damasara Jaya	(6) 016 451 0950
Dark Realm	Kota Kinabalu	(6) 019 861 6277

## PHILLIPINES

Neutral Grounds	Quezon City	(632) 634 8982
Neutral Grounds	Metro Manila	(632) 721 8443
Neutral Grounds	Makati City	(632) 813 7606

## TAIWAN

Games R Us	Kaoshiung
------------	-----------

# STOCKIST SPOTLIGHT

## MORUYA TOYS

Moruya Toys has instore gaming for Warhammer 40,000, Warhammer and The Lord of the Rings every Saturday starting at 9am and finishing at 4pm.

Address: Shop 5, 60 Queen Street  
Moruya NSW

Phone: (02) 4474 4328



## CITY MODELS

If you are interested in playing games in our new Gaming Area, or getting advice on any aspect of the Games Workshop hobby, just come on in and speak to Chris. We also have an excellent range of Warhammer 40,000, Warhammer, Citadel Paints, Hobby Products and a huge variety of The Lord of the Rings Boxed Sets and Blisters.


Address: 23/25 Piccadilly Arcade  
Perth WA 6000

Phone: (08) 9321 4338

Trading Hours: Mon - Thurs 9am - 5 30pm  
Friday 9am - 9pm  
Saturday 9am - 5pm  
Sunday 12pm - 5pm







# THE LORD OF THE RINGS

## STRATEGY BATTLE GAME

• A Tale of Good  
& Evil (Part Eleven)

• Of Harad and Umbar:  
New Background

• Boromir's Charge:  
New Scenario

• Chronicles of Middle-earth:  
The Order of the Hasharii

• The Tale of King  
Harad Timeline



## THIS MONTH'S RELEASES FOR THE LORD OF THE RINGS

### Haradrim Raiders

Designed by Gary Morley, this blister pack contains 1 Haradrim Raider.

**HARADRIM RAIDERS**  
AUS\$18 NZ\$20



### Haradrim Horsemen Chieftain

Designed by Gary Morley, this blister pack contains 1 Haradrim Chieftain mounted and 1 Haradrim Chieftain on foot.

**HARADRIM HORSEMEN CHIEFTAIN**  
AUS\$30 NZ\$35

### ▼ Hâsharin

Designed by Gary Morley, this blister pack contains 1 Hâsharin.

**HÂSHARIN**  
AUS\$14 NZ\$16



Prices quoted are for products sold by Games Workshop through its own stores, catalogue or website. Independent retailers are responsible for determining their own prices.



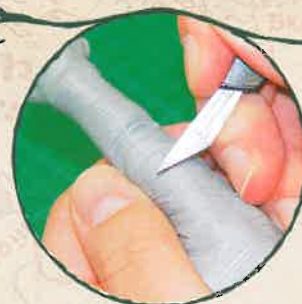
# A Tale of Good & Evil

Part Eleven – the Mûmakil

In the penultimate installment of the A Tale of Good & Evil series, after months of waiting, Adrian Wood finally gets to crack open the paint pots to bring to life one of the most impressive models ever to emerge from the Perrys' imaginations. Straight from the Pelennor Fields comes the mighty battle oliphaunt that is the Mûmak.

## The Mûmakil

by Adrian Wood



### Assembling the Mûmak

The largest models I'd made for The Lord of The Rings were my three Ringwraiths on Fell Beast. The approach I'd taken was to completely assemble the monsters, leaving the riders separate. This made painting the individual models much easier so I decided to take the same approach with the Mûmak. The Mûmak itself would be an obvious sub-assembly. Both the howdah and its tower would be much easier to paint if kept as separate pieces.

There was loads of detail on the creature's base to paint, so that would need to be attached at the end. I would also paint and add the front prongs and flags later as well.

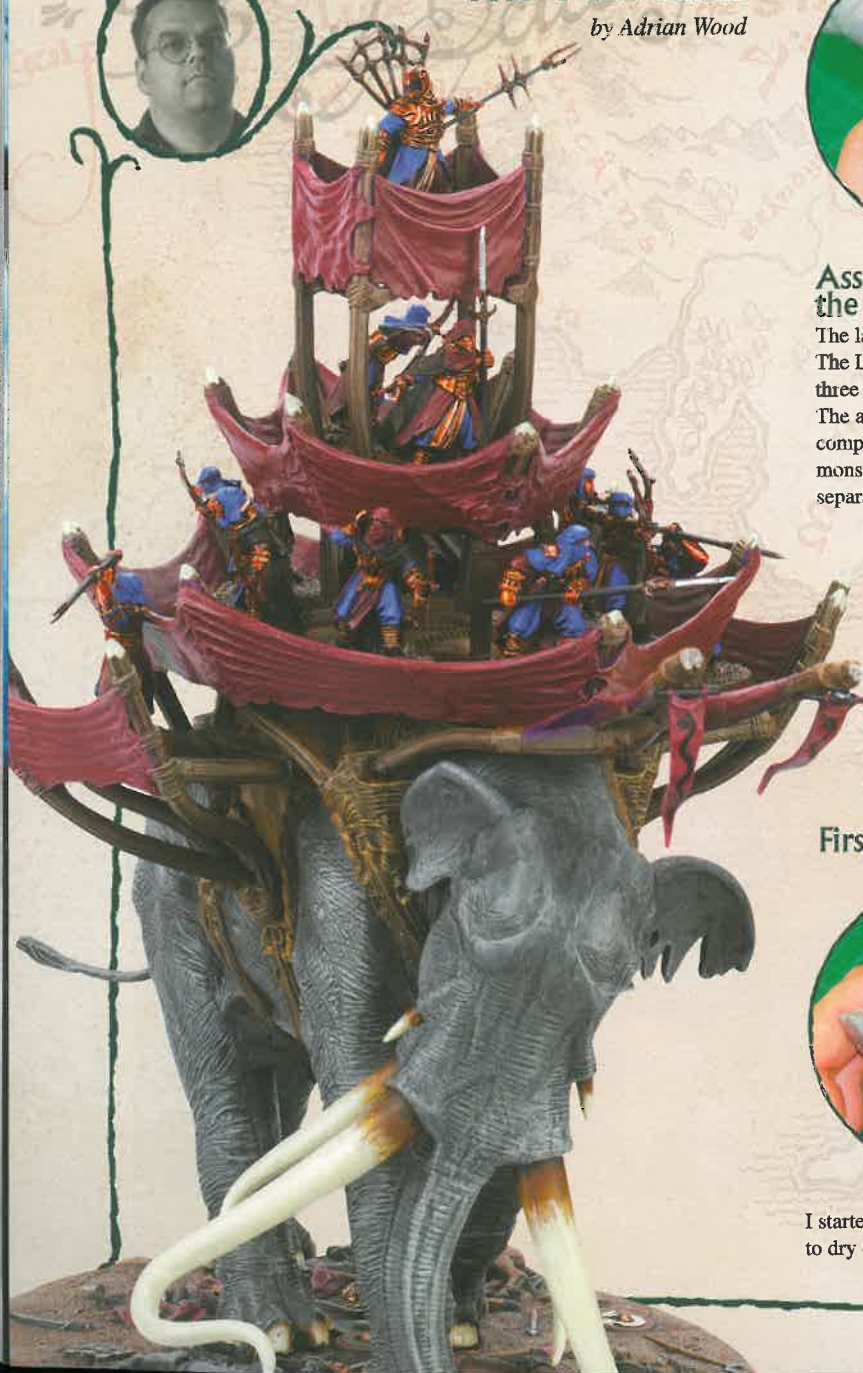
Throughout the model I deliberately applied plenty of plastic glue to any seams that needed to be filed or scrapped smooth afterwards, such as on the legs or the two halves of the body. When squeezed firmly together, the excess glue created an exaggerated ridge of plastic that I could trim away once dry to make a smooth finish whilst trying to leave the original sculpting intact (see pictures, above).

### First Steps



I started on the legs, leaving them to dry overnight.

I then did the same with the tower.





# Evil

- the Mûmakil

I converted and Rings miniatures, els I didn't get round ally wanted to unleash del took some time to finally put it on the



## The Mûmak's Head

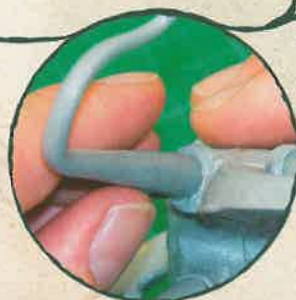
To improve the fit of the two halves of the head, I scraped a little of the plastic.



Once I was sure I'd got the best fit possible I glued them together.



After test fitting the trunk to the head, I filed down its base to make the join better.



I positioned each tusk individually, looking from underneath to get them to appear roughly symmetrical.

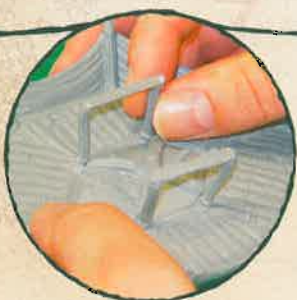


loads of detail on the se to paint, so that to be attached at the also paint and add ngs and flags later

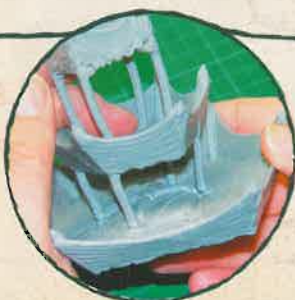


## The Howdah

I trimmed the cloth slightly to fit the tower a little better.



I then built up the supports on the base of the howdah.



To help the supports dry in place I rested the tower on top.



Again, I used the tower as a guide to positioning the single supports.

*N.B. The supports come with pegs top and bottom. I removed the top pegs so that they matched the supports. This would make final assembly easier.*

out the model I applied plenty of to any seams that I filed or scrapped wards, such as on the two halves of hen squeezed firmly excess glue exaggerated ridge of could trim away, make a smooth trying to leave the pting intact (above).

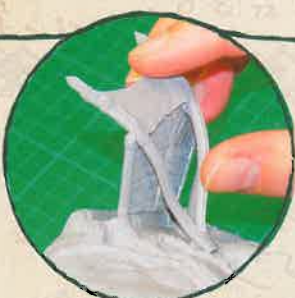


## The Howdah (cont.)

With the legs finished, I glued the two halves of the Mûmak together.



I bent the platform slightly so they fitted the supports.



I was able to glue it to the Mûmak with the supports underneath.



## Finishing Touches

With the howdah resting in position (but not glued on), I glued its supports to the Mûmak's body. Once I'd glued the head and tail in place, I filled any gaps with Green Stuff.



e same with the tower.





### Drybrushing and Overbrushing

Taking a look over the sprues, I was impressed by the amount of detail on the model. The beast's wrinkled skin and all the wickerwork on the howdah would be a dream to paint. These kind of textured surfaces are best painted using a combination of overbrushing and drybrushing, I think.

Drybrushing is a fast and attractive technique for adding highlights to areas of raised detail. It can also be used to apply a fine texture to large flat areas, such as armour plating, to create a realistic effect. Take a brush (preferably an old one, as drybrushing will quickly damage your brushes) and mix up a light shade of the base colour.

The paint needs to be fairly dense. If the paint is a little thin, let it dry slightly on the palette. Work the colour into the brush and then wipe any excess back onto the palette.

Now – most importantly – run the brush over a tissue or newspaper, or some similarly absorbent surface, until the strokes leave almost no mark even when applied with pressure.



Begin by stroking the brush gently over the surface that you wish to highlight. Ideally the brush should leave no discernible strokes, depositing instead a fine, even dusting of colour over the high points on the model.

The drier the brush, the more the effect will appear as a dusting of even colour. Build up the

highlights gradually and notice how repeated dusting gives naturally graduated highlights.

Overbrushing is almost the same technique as drybrushing but instead of using a dry brush, you apply a light stroke of paint over the surface to pick out the texture.



### Choosing Colours

When I'd painted my three Fell Beasts a few months back, I had used a very specific combination of colours to paint their skin. I had even gone as far as to mix a pot of

equal parts Dark Flesh and Codex Grey which I used as a warm basecoat to the creatures. I decided to use the same approach to paint the Mûmak's skin.

### The Body and Howdah

#### Stage 1

I overbrushed the mix of Dark Flesh and Codex Grey onto the skin. For a natural shade effect, I left some of the black undercoat showing in the recesses. I painted the whole of the howdah, including the ropes, canopy, wood and wickerwork fighting platforms the same overall base coat: Scorched Brown.



#### Stage 2

Once the basecoat was dry, I overbrushed Codex Grey onto the creature's hide, and then worked my brush around the contours of the model to make strong highlights. Whilst trying to maintain a feeling of natural light and shade, I heavily drybrushed the howdah with Bestial Brown.



#### Stage 3

Once more I used the skin's contours to my advantage as I finished the skin with a drybrush of Bleached Bone. The strongest highlights were around the creature's eyes. As well as drybrushing Snakebite Leather onto the ropes, wood and wickerwork, I layered a couple of coats of the paint onto the flat cloth of the saddle blanket.



#### Stage 4

The final highlighting of the howdah was with a drybrush of Bleached Bone. I paid particular attention to the ropes, applying a little more paint to make them stand out.

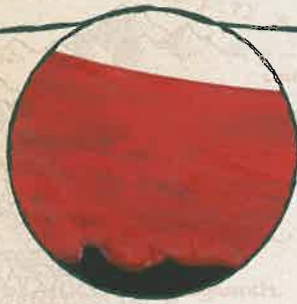




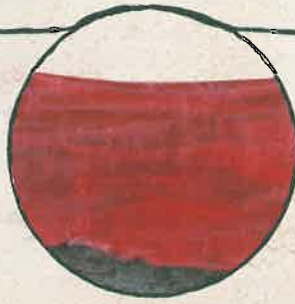


### Red Cloth

The basecoat of the red cloth was a layer of Liche Purple.



To make a solid red I applied a couple of layers of Scab Red.



I then drybrushed the cloth equal parts mix of Scab Red and Bleached Bone.



Finally I drybrushed Bleached Bone along the folds in the cloth.



### The Flags

After painting the flags in the style of the rest of the red cloth, I painted on the black Harad snake symbol. Starting with a simple wavy line for the body, I then painted the shape of the creature's head, complete with eye.



### The Tusks

With a basecoat of Scorched Brown, I painted rough stripes of Bestial Brown near the base of the tusk for a ridged effect. I repeated this using Snakebite Leather, Bubonic Brown and finally Bleached Bone.

### The Base

I drybrushed the base Bestial Brown, followed by Bleached Bone: a simple but effective contrast to the colour of the Mûmak's hide. Borrowing a couple of Steve's Rohirrim models, I copied his colour scheme onto paint the fallen Mordor Orcs. The Mordor Orcs were based on my own forces. To finish off the base I drybrushed all the warriors with Bleached Bone, which not only highlighted the models but also gave them a dusty feel as well.

Now that I'd finished painting all the separate pieces, I superglued them together to make the final model. Then I painted the crew.



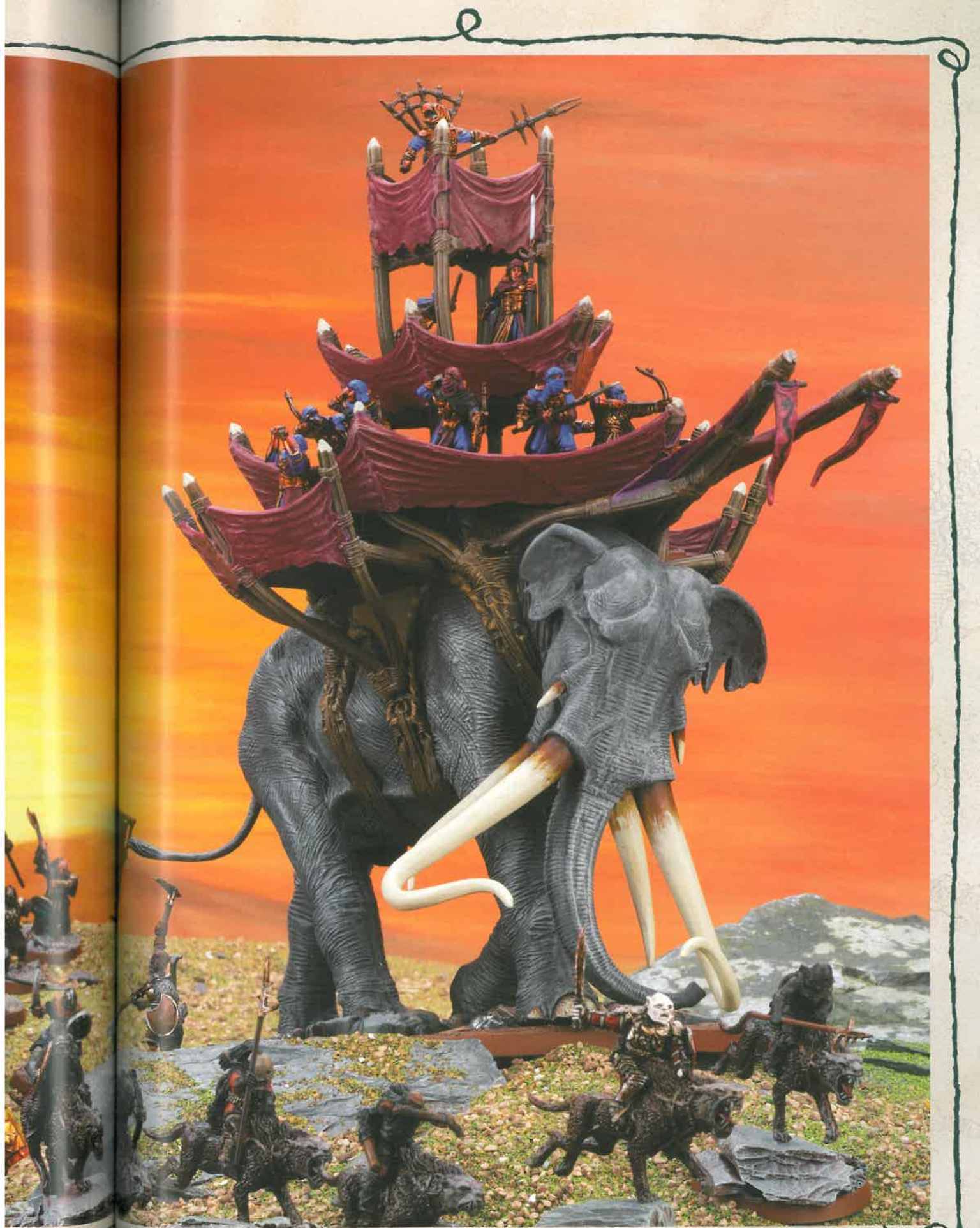


## To War!

The Mûmak is the largest model I've modelled and painted. By breaking the assembly of the model down into smaller sub-assemblies, I was able to paint the individual areas much more easily and concentrate on getting the little details looking good too. From time to time I would take time out to stack the howdah and tower on the Mûmak's back. This meant I didn't lose sight of how the complete model was looking. With the Mûmak finished, I'm ready to unleash it on the battlefield.









# Of Harad and Umbar

*The history of the Haradrim, by Mat Ward*

The people of Harad have endured a life of instability and uncertainty. A weakness exploited by Sauron to bend the Haradrim to his will in his quest to conquer Middle-earth.

The land known to most as Harad lies upon the southern border of Gondor, past the Harnen river. Only along the shores of the great sea can truly fertile ground be found, for leagues of savannah and desert stretch far inland. It is an arid place, a stark contrast to the green and fertile fields of Gondor's southern fiefs, but one which has played its part in the great events that have shaped Middle-earth. The early history of Harad is largely unknown, for it was shunned by

the Elves when the world was young. Why this should be, no one can answer with any great certainty, for much knowledge from those times has been lost as the Firstborn dwindled. Only in the south do any tales of Harad remain, but these are largely unheard, for the storytellers are a people isolated by distance and history. What these people actually call themselves is unknown in the north, where they are simply called Haradrim, or Southrons. Of those few Haradrim legends that have come to the ears of the Wise, some tell that Harad was once a great and verdant kingdom before tragedy befell it, scattering its people and leaving much of the land barren and wild. Others simply recount the passage of time in an unchanging land that was troubled little by the wars that wracked the First Age. Even the Wise cannot say where the truth lies, or why the curiosity of the Elves never led them to this land, but Harad to this day remains a silent and isolated place.

Life in Harad has remained unchanged for centuries, for even the will of kings and princes finds difficult purchase upon those who live amongst desert and rock. Before the arrival of the Númenóreans, Harad was an anarchic and fractious land. No common drive or purpose guided the Haradrim, and the territory of the tribes ebbed and flowed like tides upon the shore. The scattered tribes lived a nomadic existence, journeying between the few farming settlements along the riverbanks and the scarce towns, caring nothing for the world beyond their own. Occasionally tribes would

sweep out of the desert into bordering realms, using their force of arms to steal whatever they could. Such raids were rightly feared, for the Haradrim had ever been skilled archers and horsemen, fashioning deadly ambushes before fading once more into the depths of the desert.

## The Rule of Númenor

As the years of the Second Age passed, the growing power of Númenor began to touch the shores not only of Harad, but all the lands of Middle-earth. Though tentative in their explorations at first, soon the Men of the West had founded havens along the coasts of Middle-earth. Even though many of the great rivers that ran through the desert were deep enough to accommodate the

draught of their ships – for many dozens of leagues in some cases – they journeyed no further inland. Instead, the Númenóreans founded a great city in the firth of Umbar, a vast natural harbour on the southern shores of the Bay of Belfalas. They satisfied themselves with the friendship of the Haradrim tribes, trading goods and knowledge with the people of the land about their city. However, as Númenor's greed grew, the city of Umbar became a fortified citadel from whose gates the Men of Westmessen would levy great tribute upon the lesser Men. The Númenóreans installed as client kings those chieftains that submitted to their will, each invested as the ruler of a portion of land; any who would not swear fealty were slain.

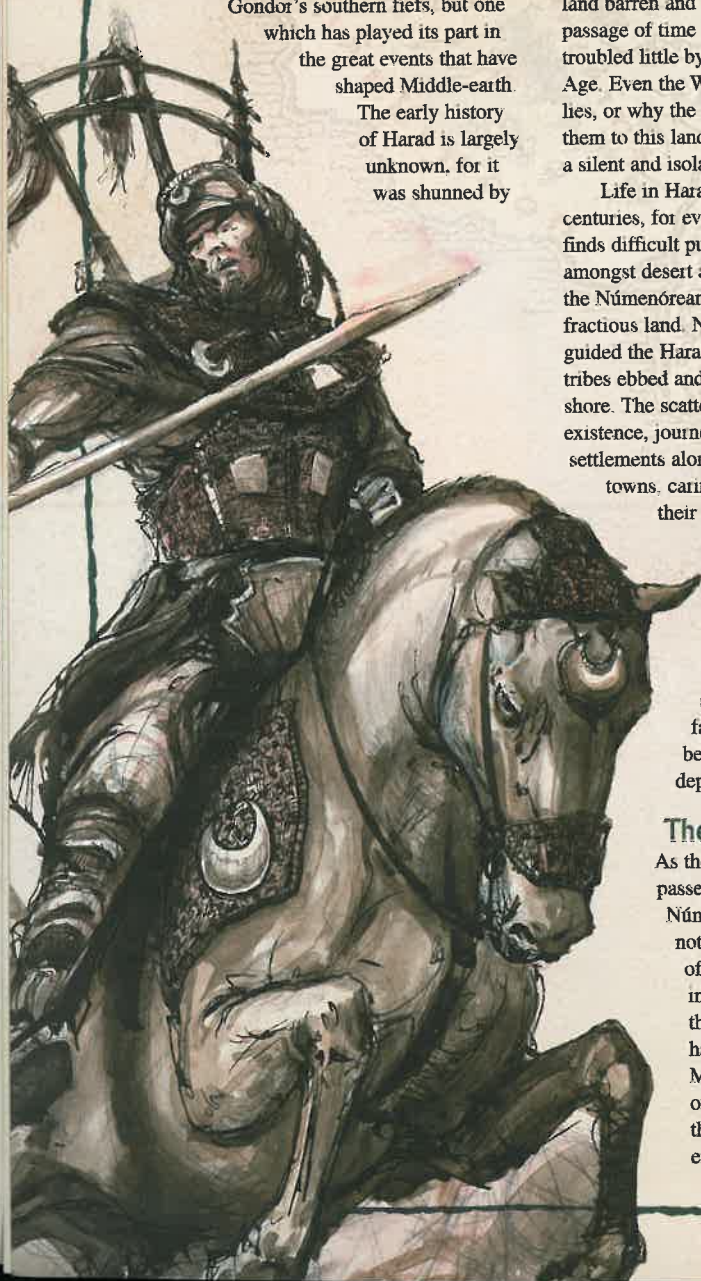
As is told more completely elsewhere, what had been good and noble in the Men of Númenor became twisted and wicked in all but a handful as Sauron, The Lord of the Rings, cast his influence upon them. The Men of Númenor turned from grace and, in their desire for power, cast their efforts into the worship of darkness. The dark practices that abounded in those days on the isle of Númenor were duplicated in all but a few havens upon Middle-earth, and Umbar was tainted by the same corruption. In time this folly led to the destruction of Númenor, yet in Umbar these Black Númenóreans endured and the Lords of Umbar continued to dominate Harad and its people.

## The Third Age Begins

In time, Sauron was cast down by an alliance of Elves and Númenóreans who had remained faithful to the old ways; the Second Age passed and the Third Age began. The victorious Men, the Dunédain, prospered and their kingdom of Gondor grew to rival the glory of Númenor ere Sauron's shadow fell upon it. As Gondor waxed, Umbar waned.

King Eärnil I of Gondor resolved to retake Umbar from his sundered kin, for it had ever been a threat to Gondor's southern border. The king set sail for the shores of Umbar with a great navy and, after a long and costly siege, his estranged kinsmen were driven from the city, and the Black Númenóreans were forced to seek shelter with the very people over whom they had claimed rulership.

As Eärnil reshaped Umbar into a haven of Gondor, the city's former masters gathered a great army in the desert, awaiting the moment to strike. Their chance came swiftly, for a great storm in the Bay of Belfalas drowned Eärnil, and many ships and men were lost at his side.





# Har

many dozens of  
y journeyed no  
Númenóreans  
firth of Umbar, a  
southern shores of  
atisfied themselves  
Haradrim tribes,  
ge with the people.  
However, as  
city of Umbar  
rom whose gates the  
levy great tribute  
Númenóreans  
se chieftains that  
h invested as the  
ny who would not

etely elsewhere,  
oble in the Men of  
and wicked in all bar  
ord of the Rings.  
m. The Men of  
e and, in their desire  
s into the worship of  
es that abounded in  
Númenor were  
havens upon  
was tainted by the  
his folly led to the  
et in Umbar these  
ed and the Lords  
minate Harad and

## gins

own by an alliance  
s who had remained  
e Second Age passed.  
The victorious Men  
and their kingdom of  
glory of Númenor ere  
it. As Gondor

lor resolved to retaliate  
kin, for it had ever  
southern border. The  
s of Umbar with a  
g and costly siege,  
re driven from the  
Númenóreans were forced  
y people over whom  
p.  
imbar into a haven of  
masters gathered a  
waiting the moment  
me swiftly, for a great  
las drowned Eänil.  
were lost at his side.



*The Haradrim have been forced to adapt to life in the desert*

ring the haven's garrison greatly weakened,  
the deposed rulers of Umbar moved to reclaim  
their realm. Umbar was brought under siege  
once more, and only the might of Gondor's  
power kept it secure – though at great cost.

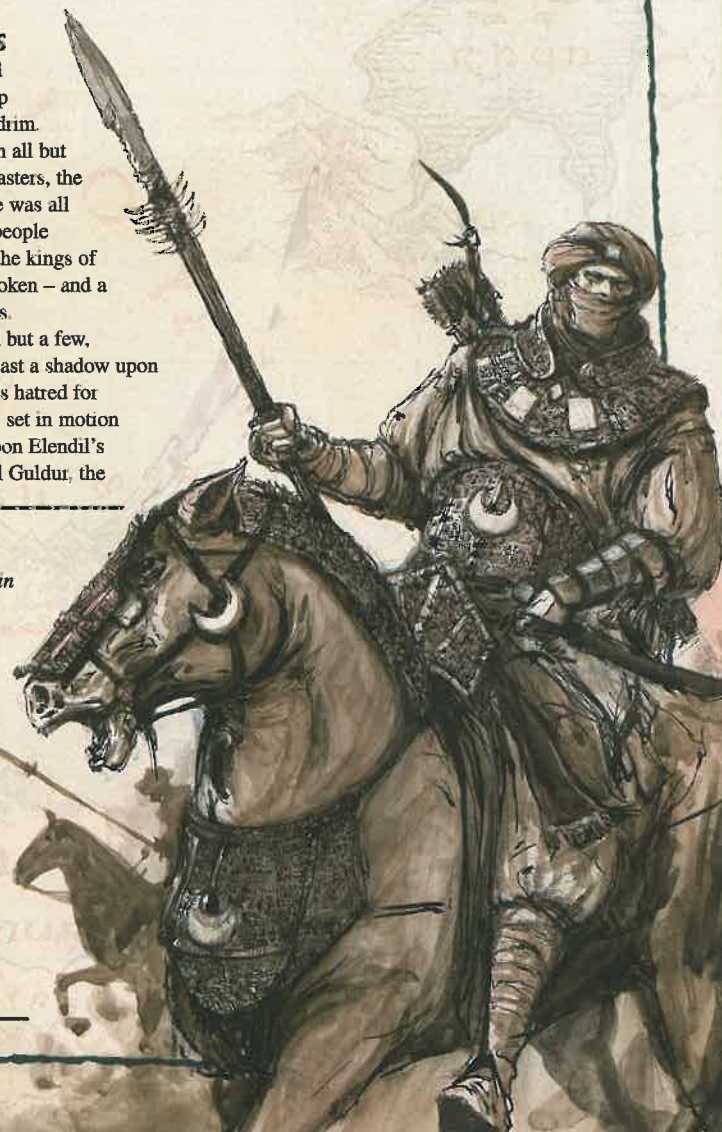
For more than a generation, Gondor  
fought with the Black Númenórean lords and  
kings of Harad for control of Umbar and  
surrounding lands. Finally, after battles  
without number and sorrows beyond  
counting, a great army came down out of  
Mordor and Gondor's will prevailed. The  
armies of Harad were crushed, the Black  
Númenóreans all but destroyed. The Haradrim  
swore their allegiance to Gondor, for  
their sons were now taken as hostages to  
ensure their loyalty.

## The Shadow Returns

So it was that resentment and  
hatred of Gondor burned deep  
within the hearts of the Haradrim.  
Though their people had been all but  
enslaved by their previous masters, the  
hurt of this new acquiescence was all  
the more raw. The common people  
chafed at Gondor's will and the kings of  
Harad were dismayed and broken – and a  
peace endured for many years.

Alas, unbeknownst to all but a few,  
Sauron once more began to cast a shadow upon  
the lands of Middle-earth. His hatred for  
Gondor had not faded and he set in motion  
events to craft his revenge upon Elendil's  
line. From the fortress of Dol Guldur, the

**W**hether you're wanting to play small skirmishes, large-scale battles or  
sieges, you can use this article to give you ideas for plenty of games set in  
and around Harad. They don't all require special scenarios – many can be  
played from the standard 'Points Match' – just agree the size of your game  
and away you go! We've included several basic scenario ideas, with a few  
suggestions on how to expand them, based around events in Harad's  
history. These by no means should be seen as limitations, but rather  
suggestions you can use to create your own scenarios and special rules.  
Alternatively, with such a rich background available to experiment  
with, why not create your own narrative campaign and scenarios? There  
are plenty of important events and characters within the history of Harad  
that you can use. If you wish to re-enact the rise of Mârdat, for example,  
you could start off with a few small games to represent the Haradrim  
gathering his strength. If he survives, play some larger battles and  
sieges that re-enact his forging of the kingdom of Fur Harad.  
Throughout all of this, the Good player should be aiming to kill Mârdat  
and thus end the uprising.





## SCENARIO IDEA 1

# THE UPRISING

The people of Harad have risen against their overlords and the Hāsharii have been unleashed to eliminate the traitor rulers of the southlands. Can Gondor's garrison thwart the assassination attempt, or will the cultists prevail?

### Participants: Good

- 3 Haradrim Chieftains
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with bow
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield and spear

### Evil

- 3 Hāsharii

### Layout

This scenario is played on a board 24"/56cm by 24"/56cm. The playing area represents the centre of a Haradrim town and should be covered with houses, forming a tight network of streets.

### Starting Positions

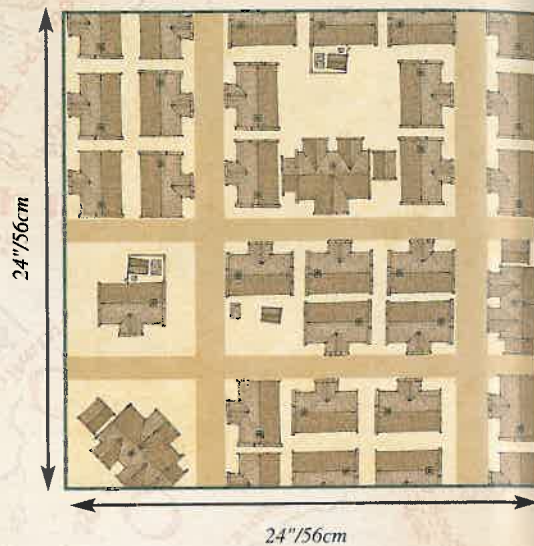
The Good player deploys his force anywhere on the board but no model may be deployed within 3"/8cm of another. The Evil player then places each Hāsharin in base contact with a different board edge.

### Objectives

The Evil player wins if the Haradrim chieftains are slain – the Good player wins if the Hāsharii are killed before achieving their objectives.

### Taking it further

To add to the drama of the scenario, try using a reinforcements-style rule for the Warriors of Minas Tirith to make the action into a race against time for the Hāsharii. Alternatively, use slightly different profiles to represent the chieftains, give one 3 Wounds, for example, and another only 1 Attack.



*The people of Harad rise up to defend their lands against the men of Gondor*



Lord sent emissaries to those he would  
to his will. Some journeyed to Harad,  
his friendship to the remaining  
of the Black Númenóreans, for  
could see a part they could yet play in  
schemes. Hidden from the sight of Gondor's  
rulers, these hidden renegades began to  
the worship of Sauron as a deity,  
power and wisdom would free the  
of Harad. This worship spread rapidly  
throughout the Haradrim, though the kings  
to suppress it as best they could, for they  
feared the retribution of Gondor's armies.  
truth, their fears were unfounded –  
Gondor's gaze was now fixed upon itself  
war had broken out in the north, fanned  
Sauron's guile as he set his mind upon the  
of his enemies.

## The Kinstrife

There was a new king in Gondor, Eldacar, son  
of Valacar. He was not of pure Númenórean  
descent, for his mother was born of the lesser  
tribes that dwell in Rhovanion. Many held  
Eldacar in disdain, for they feared that the  
division between the two races would diminish  
the majesty of the Dunédain.

Such mistrust was fertile ground indeed for  
Sauron's deceptions. Soon Castamir, a cousin to the

crown, rallied all those whose malcontent was  
greater than their loyalty into uprising against  
their rightful sovereign. Seeing Gondor  
weakened, the Black Númenóreans provoked a  
similar uprising in the lands of Harad.

In a week of treachery and death, the  
Haradrim kings and their families were slain by  
agents of the Cult of Sauron, and the Black  
Númenórean lords seized power once more.  
The people of Harad, united in their desire for  
freedom from Gondor, rose up by the  
thousands. Their own ranks were riven with  
turmoil while beset by the Harad, and those  
who remained loyal to Eldacar were sorely  
pressed to contain both uprisings.

For five years, the loyalist forces struggled  
to maintain control over Gondor's domains but,  
united by common cause, their enemies grew  
ever stronger. In a final, desperate battle that  
consumed the city of Osgiliath in flames,  
Eldacar and the loyalist forces were driven out  
into the north and Castamir usurped the throne.  
With the exile of its rightful king, Gondor's  
hold over the south was broken; only Umbar  
remained loyal to Eldacar, for there was a great  
garrison of his supporters there.

In time, the banished king was able to  
marshal enough support to regain his throne.  
Though the pretender held his position for only

a decade, his sons, and the forces still loyal to  
them, escaped with much of Gondor's fleet.

## The Corsairs of Umbar

Castamir's sons led their followers south to  
Umbar and, while the loyalist garrison strove  
against attack from the Haradrim on land,  
assailed them from the sea. Many are the tales  
told in Gondor of Umbar's fall, of deeds noble  
and black performed in its defence. After seven  
days of continuous fighting, the citadel finally  
was taken. Those amongst the garrison who had  
not perished in the siege were tortured and  
slain, their broken bodies displayed along every  
road leading to the city. The victorious forces,  
renegades and traitors all, remade the citadel  
anew into a refuge for all enemies of Gondor.  
With victory the tribes of Harad, no longer  
recognising a common leader, quarrelled with  
one another. Though some remained loyal to  
Umbar, the new lords of that city did not  
possess sufficient might to dominate the tribes  
as they once had. Many returned to the old  
nomadic ways, paying tribute to Umbar, but  
being led and ruled by their tribal chieftains.  
A great many of Sauron's allies amongst the  
Haradrim turned away from their worship of  
the Dark Lord, becoming the personal agents of  
the Lords of Umbar. Through this order – the

# SCENARIO IDEA 2 THE KINSTRIFE

A deadly battle rages in Osgiliath, with loyalist and insurgent  
fighting for control not only of the capital, but of all Gondor. Can  
Eldacar hold onto his throne, or will Castamir usurp him?

## Participants: Good

- King of Men (Eldacar)
- Citadel Guard with spear
- Citadel Guard with longbow
- Warriors of Minas Tirith with bow
- Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield
- Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield and spear

## Evil

- Captain of Men (Castamir)
- Haradrim Warriors with bow
- Haradrim Warriors with spear
- Warriors of Gondor with shield and spear
- Warriors of Gondor with shield
- Warriors of Gondor with bow

## Layout

This scenario is played on a board 48"/112cm by 48"/112cm. The  
playing area represents the centre of Osgiliath town and should be  
covered with ruins and houses, with the one or two wide plazas.

## Starting Positions

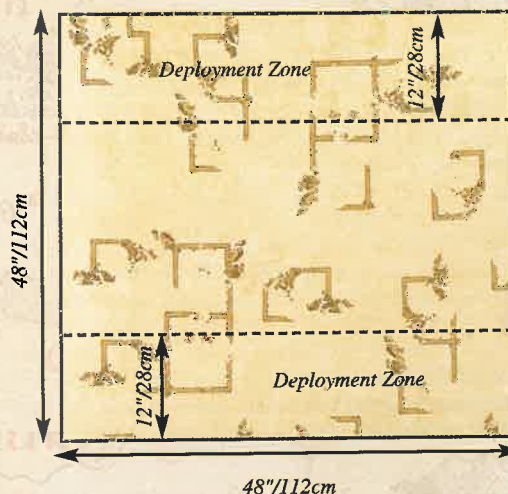
The Good player deploys his force within 12"/28cm of a board edge of  
his choice. The Evil player then deploys his force within 12"/28cm of  
the opposite board edge.

## Objectives

The Evil player wins if Eldacar is slain and the Good force is reduced  
to 50% or below. The Good player wins if Castamir is slain and the  
Evil force is reduced to 50% or below. Any other result is a draw.

## Taking it Further

The Battle for Osgiliath was a conflict that left the city ruined and  
broken. Try increasing the size of both forces – particularly adding  
some Trebuchets to either side. Alternatively, the battle could be taking  
place on the great bridge as it burns – models taking a Strength 1 hit  
from the flames at the start of each Priority phase.





Hāsharii – they gradually began to once more enact their will upon the people of Harad. In the long years that followed, Umbar slowly rebuilt its strength, its great fleet of corsairs again raiding the lands still loyal to Gondor. Though the armies of Gondor twice defeated the men of Umbar and Harad in the years that followed, the north kingdom lacked sufficient ships to beset their foe at sea, and so, shielded by its navy, Umbar endured.

### The Deeds of Thorongil

In the late Third Age, the realms of Gondor and Umbar continued their rivalry, though neither could best the other. As Sauron's malice grew in the north, Gondor weakened, its cities beset by plague and its armies stretched by conflicts on other fronts. Once during the late Third Age was a great blow struck against the fallen haven; a captain of Gondor deemed the corsairs about to strike and so led a fleet south into the very harbours of Umbar. His forces cast down the Master of the haven in a battle upon the quayside, before setting much of the corsair fleet aflame and stealing away northwards. This captain was known to his followers and to the Steward of Gondor as Thorongil, but his true name was Aragorn, son of Arathorn, and his actions doubtless spared Gondor a great hurt.

### The Gathering Storm

Time passed and, as the War of the Ring drew on, a noticeable change came over Harad. Spurred on by Sauron, the Lords of Umbar tightened their control over the tribesmen, demanding ever-increasing tribute from them. Even though this drove many to the brink of starvation, these fractured and distant tribes had no choice but to accede to the demands. Indeed some – those who had maintained the worship of Sauron – welcomed the chance to fight his enemies. Great armies were assembled and trained in the lands below the Harnen river, awaiting the onset of Sauron's great war. The mighty Mûmakil were assembled in their scores, mercenaries from the lands below Harad by the hundreds drawn in by the lure of gold and plunder, and the ships of the Corsairs made ready for battle. As these armies assembled, the Lords belatedly realised that by bringing their forces into one place they invited the repressed Haradrim to revolt against their increasingly unpopular decrees. To guard against such a rebellion, the Hāsharii were given greater power and sent out to maintain control over the tribes. The Hāsharii became the emissaries of the Lords of Umbar, the arbiters and implementers of their will. Some recalcitrant chieftains who refused the Lords' demands simply vanished. Others were seized and

ritually executed under the gaze of their kin, the better to set an example. Slowly, the disparate tribes came tightly under the control of the Lords of Umbar, and the Hāsharii, once more.

### The Two Emissaries

Some years after Thorongil's raid, two emissaries came to Umbar seeking audience with its lords. The first was clad solely in grey and spoke with a determination that showed the inner fire behind his words. As his eyes swept the council, he told them that war between the Free Peoples of Middle-earth and Sauron, Lord of Mordor, was now imminent. He counselled them that this would likely be the final conflict, and that it would leave the world forever changed for good or for ill. He treated with them to lay aside their past estrangements, to reunite with their kin in Gondor.

Though he spoke wisely and eloquently, the lords, fearful that their control over the south would be put at risk, refused his request and banished him from their lands. Within a day of the grey pilgrim having been sent upon his way, another messenger stood before the council. Where the other emissary had been grey-clad, this one was robed solely in black. Wherever he walked, dogs would cower in fear, and horses would shy away. Even the boldest of the Lords of Umbar felt a chill upon their

## SCENARIO IDEA 3 THORONGIL'S RAID

A daring attack has been launched on Umbar's harbour, throwing the fleet into disarray and threatening many vessels. As the boats burn, Thorongil attempts to hold the Haradrim back from the ships. Can the Haradrim defenders repulse the raiders, or will Thorongil succeed in his mission?

### Participants: Good

- Aragorn (Thorongil)
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with bow
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield
- 4 Warriors of Minas Tirith with shield and spear

### Evil

- 1 Hāsharii
- 2 Haradrim Chieftains
- 6 Haradrim Warriors with bow
- 6 Haradrim Warriors with spear

### Layout

This scenario is played on a board 12"/28cm by 48"/112cm. The playing area represents the quayside of Umbar and will have one or two small buildings and a wealth of crates and barrels which form barricades.

### Starting Positions

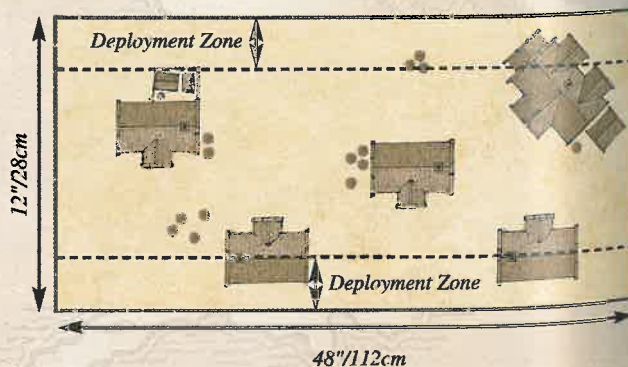
The Good player deploys his force within 3"/8cm of one of the long board edges. The Evil player deploys within 3"/8cm of the opposite edge.

### Objectives

The Evil player wins if more than 4 of his models leave the board from the Good player's deployment edge – they reach the boats in time to quench the flames (note that models leaving the board as the result of a failed Courage test do not count). Any other result is a Good victory.

### Taking it Further

Try expanding the board to a 24"/56cm by 48"/112cm playing surface and use models or objective counters to represent the boats. You can also introduce rules for burning the boats and have the victory conditions work towards this goal instead.





aze of their kin, the  
wly, the disparate  
control of the  
sharii, once more.

raid, two  
eking audience  
lad solely in grey  
on that showed the  
As his eyes swept  
t war between the  
t and Sauron, Lord  
nt. He counselled  
e the final conflict,  
orld forever  
le treated with  
strangements, to  
dor.

and eloquently,  
ntrol over the  
fused his request  
lands. Within a  
g been sent upon  
ood before the  
ssary had been  
l solely in black.  
ould cower in fear.  
Even the boldest of  
ll upon their

the board from  
ats in time to  
is the result of a  
Good victory.

playing surface  
ats. You can  
victory



*A Hasharin about to enforce the will of the Lords of Umbar*

starts when transfixed by his gaze. What he  
all them was much the same as they had  
already heard. Lord Sauron the Great was  
preparing to scour the land of those who  
opposed him, including the hated descendants  
of Elendil. Lord Sauron, the herald proclaimed,  
was seeking to re-establish old alliances, for  
he had not always been a friend to those who  
struggled against the men of the stone land  
to the north? He bade them to gather their  
armies and wait for the day they would be  
called upon for aid.

Alnârin, the head of the council, asked if  
Lord Sauron thought them to be fools, for it  
was plain to him that the friendship of the Dark  
Lord had been always for ends that were his  
alone. Furthermore, it seemed to Alnârin that  
the friendship of Umbar and Harad were  
greatly prized now that others had need of aid.  
He told the second emissary that which he  
told the first, Umbar would stand alone. It  
would not become embroiled in the conflicts of  
other lands, like some dog that has learnt to  
perform a pleasing trick for its master in  
exchange for a few scraps from his table.  
A cold silence fell upon the room as the dark  
messenger considered these words. He then  
turned and, without a word, left the great hall of  
the citadel.

Though the council gave orders that this  
messenger too should be banished, those sent to  
perform their will could find no trace of the  
dark figure. It was as if he had vanished, leaving  
no sign of his passing. In the dead of night, long  
after the council members had retired to their  
chambers, the still air was split by a long drawn  
wail, an evil cry from somewhere within the  
city which froze the blood of all who heard it.  
A short while later, another cry rose up in  
answer, this time beyond the city walls. The  
following morning, as the sun's rays danced  
across the spires of the city, Alnârin's servants  
found the ruined form of their master upon his

bed. His body had been hacked nearly apart, as  
if set upon by a great many foes, though the  
window was barred and the guard outside the  
door could recall nothing of the previous night.  
When the remaining members of the council  
convened later that day, the dark messenger  
came before them once more. He had come for  
their final answer; at this second visit, the Lords  
dared not deny him.

Superficially, the Lords of Umbar appeared  
to be doing Sauron's will. From time to time his  
emissary would return with instructions or gifts  
from the Dark Lord. He appeared satisfied with  
the army that was assembling, for it was a force  
of arms so great that it should easily sweep  
away the defences of South Gondor. In private,  
however, the Lords became ever more afraid for  
their position. Their actions had turned hostile  
and fearful a people once indifferent to their  
rule. Worse still, by gathering their armies in  
such numbers, they risked a chieftain seizing  
enough military power to make a stand  
against them.

Trapped in a cage fashioned by their own  
hands, the Lords of Umbar bound themselves to  
a stratagem crafted to protect them from the  
consequences of their folly. To appease Sauron  
their armies would march north on Gondor, but  
each would be divided into a smaller force, and  
would be under the constant scrutiny of a group  
of Hâsharii. These were the precautions taken to  
prevent a charismatic chieftain gaining control  
over a force large enough to challenge the  
power of Umbar. The war too would help them  
in this goal, for the casualties suffered by the  
Haradrim would be severe, likely so great that  
the survivors could be of no conceivable  
challenge to the Lords at its conclusion. To  
further safeguard their position, none of  
Umbar's armies would be sent north – only  
those of Harad would fight. The elite guard,  
personally loyal to the Lords, would remain  
untouched by the conflict that would sweep

With the release of Pelennor Fields the  
forces of Harad are a viable themed  
army all of their own. If you're wanting  
to create a themed Haradrim army,  
either by itself or as part of a themed  
Pelennor Fields army, use the following  
guidelines:

### Heroes

Suladân  
Hâsharii  
Haradrim Chieftains  
Mûmakil

### Warriors

Haradrim Warriors  
Haradrim Raiders

Middle-earth. Of the forces personally loyal to  
the rulers of Umbar, only the corsair fleets  
would take part in this war. The southern fiefs of  
Gondor were poorly defended and ripe for the  
taking – especially once the Haradrim began to  
advance, drawing off most of the defenders. The  
rich farmland of these fiefs would be a great  
prize if captured and would contribute greatly to  
the prosperity of the realm of Umbar. If Sauron  
won the war, he would likely allow the Lords to  
keep the land they had taken in exchange for  
their obedience. Should Sauron somehow be  
defeated, the forces of Gondor would be so  
reduced that it would be many years before they  
could attempt to reclaim their lost fiefs. Umbar  
would control every harbour along the Bay of  
Belfalas, and its domination of the south would  
be uncontested once again. Though some of the  
Haradrim armies would be ambushed on the  
way to Mordor, waylaid by the defenders of  
Gondor, most would eventually reach the great  
killing fields of the Pelennor....



# The Tale of Years – Harad Timeline

## SECOND AGE

**600** The ships of Númenor begin to appear off the coasts of Harad.

**c1000** Sauron takes Mordor as his stronghold and begins the building of Barad-dûr.

**c2280** The haven of Umbar is founded. It is greatly fortified and swiftly becomes the chief haven of Númenor upon the shores of Middle-earth.

**2350** The founding of Pelargir, chief haven of the Faithful.

**c2700** Umbar begins to dominate the surrounding lands.

**3261** The Dark Lord surrenders to the king of Númenor and is taken prisoner. A memorial of the event is set upon the Umbar headlands.

**3262-3310** Sauron corrupts the Númenóreans.

**3319** The downfall of Númenor. The island realm is swallowed by the sea. Only the Faithful and the Black Númenóreans of Umbar remain.

**3320** The foundation of Gondor. Sauron returns to Mordor.

**3430-3441** The years of the Last Alliance. Sauron is defeated.

## THIRD AGE

**1-900** The years of strength. The might of Gondor grows while that of Umbar diminishes.

**933** King Eärnil I of Gondor masses a great fleet to assail Umbar and, after a great battle, takes the haven for Gondor. The Black Númenóreans are driven out into the plains of Harad and forced to seek shelter with their former subjects.

**933-936** The Black Númenóreans muster an army in the deserts of Harad.

**936** Eärnil is lost at sea along with much of the fleet of Umbar.

**c1000** The armies of Harad invest Umbar. Gondor's seapower keeps the haven safe, but it remains invested for many years.

**1015** King Ciryandil of Gondor is slain in the siege of Umbar.

**1020-1050** King Ciryaher rebuilds Gondor's fleets and armies.

**1050** Gondor's armies cross the river Harmen and relieve Umbar, utterly defeating the Men of Harad. Ciryaher takes the name 'Hyarmendacil 'South-victor'. The kings of Harad are forced to swear allegiance to Gondor. Sauron comes to Dol Guldur.

**1100** Sauron sends his emissaries out into the world. They come to Harad and found the Cult of the Eye.

**1205** Birth of Mârdat of Harad.

**1232** Mârdat becomes king of Badhra in Far Harad and is thereafter known as the Serpent Lord.

**1235** The desert kingdoms of Far Harad are united under the banner of the Serpent Lord. Those Haradrim kings still loyal to Gondor strengthen their defences.

**1236** The city of Kârna becomes the capital of Far Harad.

**1237-1240** The years of peace. An uneasy accord is formed between the Serpent Lord and

Gondor's client kings. All land below the East Road remains independent of Gondor and under Mârdat's rule.

**1241** The Serpent Lord breaks the truce and attacks Near Harad, but is defeated when mercenaries from Khand assail his army. As the army retreats, Mârdat is slain in a duel by another chieftain. Without the Serpent Lord's leadership, the armies of Far Harad swiftly collapse.

**1242** Gondor sacks the ancient city of Kârna, which thereafter becomes a deserted and haunted place.

**1242-** Gondor reasserts control over Far Harad.

**1245** Umbar becomes the capital of Harad once more. Mârdat's kingdom is divided between five new rulers, each loyal to Gondor.

**1278** Jilaad, ruler of the land about Abrakân forms a secret alliance with a Khandish prince, hoping to muster enough warriors to follow in the Serpent Lord's path.

**1281** Jilaad is betrayed to the court of Gondor by his own son. His severed head is sent across the border to Khand as a warning.

**c1350** The Cult of the Eye and the Black Númenóreans begin to encourage rebellion in the kingdoms of Harad.

**1432** The Kin-strife of Gondor begins. Civil war erupts in Gondor as King Eldacar opposes rebels led by his cousin, Castamir.

**1433** The Black Númenóreans see Gondor weakened and provoke an uprising in Harad.

**1436** Gondor's forces are driven out of Harad, save for the garrison of Umbar.

**1437** Osgiliath is burnt. Eldacar is driven northwards to Rhovanion. Castamir usurps the throne.

**1437** Eldacar returns to Gondor and slays Castamir and besieges the rebels in Pelargir.

**1448** The remaining rebels flee to Umbar and, taking the garrison unawares, conquer the city.





e

s. All land below  
is independent of  
ârdat's rule.

akes the truce and  
out is defeated  
om Khand assail his  
treats, Mârdat is  
other chieftain.  
Lord's leadership,  
ad swiftly collapse.

ient city of Kârma.  
omes a deserted and

rol over Far Harad.  
apital of Harad  
kingdom is  
new rulers, each

nd about Abrakân  
e with a Khandish  
ter enough  
he Serpent

ne court of  
n. His severed  
border to Khand

nd the Black  
o encourage  
oms of Harad.

dor begins.  
ndor as King  
s led by his

ns see Gondor  
e an uprising

iven out of Harad,  
f Umbar.

car is driven  
on.  
rone.

dor and slays  
the rebels in

lee to Umbar  
unawares,

290 An army comes out of Harad and vies  
with Gondor on the plains of Harondor,  
but is defeated.

291 The Haradrim attack Harondor once  
more, but are routed.

294 Pelargir is attacked by Castamin's  
grandsons. King Minardil is slain.

297 Gondor takes Umbar by storm and the  
last descendants of Castimir the Usurper  
are slain. The haven is swiftly retaken  
by the Haradrim.

298 King Telumehtar of Gondor oversees the  
construction of fortifications along the  
Harondor-Harad border.

299 With Harad and Umbar weakened and  
Gondor beset from the East, a state of  
uneasy peace exists between the two  
realms.

301 The Wainriders attack Gondor. The  
defences of Harondor are abandoned.

302 Harad invades Khand. The Eastern  
War begins.

304 The armies of Harad are defeated by a  
Khandish host upon the Field of Swords.  
The Lords of Umbar sue for peace with  
the Khandish kings.

308 The Hsar Karnakh becomes the chief  
seat of the Hasharii.

309 Lord Karmakh of Umbar speaks out  
against the growing power of the  
Hasharii. Over the following years he  
tries to build support amongst the other  
nobles of Umbar but meets with limited  
success.

310 Karmakh is accused of treason by the  
Hasharii. He is abandoned by his  
supporters and taken into the depths of  
the Hsar Karnak where he is tortured  
to death.

310 The last king of Gondor is lost. The rule  
of the stewards begins.

311 Merchants out of Abrakân find a great  
treasure hidden in tombs deep in the  
Nafarat. They are pursued by three  
Dimlokhi, who slay them and reclaim  
their possessions.

315 At the urging of the Cult of Sauron,  
Lord Dûnath of Umbar leads an army  
across the Harondor border. After  
defeating the garrison of that land, they  
cross the Poros and into Gondor itself.  
Rohan sends aid to Gondor and its  
warriors defeat the invasion.



*The Haradrim fight against the Knights of Dol Amroth at the battle of the Pelennor fields*

2964 Birth of Kharid Drôzhna.

2970 About this time Aragorn, under the  
name Thorongil, raids Umbar, burning  
many ships and slaying the Captain of  
the Haven. Drôzhna is recruited by the  
Hâsharii.

2974 Birth of Suladân, later the second  
Serpent Lord of Harad.

2981 Drôzhna is sought out by the Nazgûl and  
is brought under the sway of Sauron.

2982 A mysterious malady strikes the tower  
of Azkâhar, slaying all within – the folk  
of Harad avoid it from this point  
onwards.

2999 Two emissaries come to Umbar, seeking  
its allegiance in the war that is to come.  
The Lords of Umbar begin to assemble  
the Great Army of Harad.

2995 Suladân becomes leader of his tribe.

3002 Wary of Suladân's success, Drôzhna  
conspires to have him sent to guard the  
border with Khand.

3003 One of the Nine comes to Azkâhar in  
secret and takes it for his own.

3005 A series of skirmishes erupt along the  
border between Gondor and Harad.  
Many lives are lost on both sides until  
Prince Imrahil leads an army south from  
Dol Amroth and thwarts the Haradrim.

3006 Boromir, son of Denethor leads a bold  
raid out of Harondor. He and his

followers wreak destruction amongst the  
gathering Great Army of Harad, setting  
back the plans of the Lords of Umbar by  
many years.

3007 The town of Ratarn in Far Harad refuses  
to contribute either men or supplies to  
the army that is growing in the north.  
Drôzhna is given the task of ensuring  
their compliance. Instead, he raises the  
town to the ground and has its  
inhabitants slaughtered.

3010 A great army sweeps out of Khand,  
destroying the fortress of Pazghar.  
Suladân counter-attacks, slaying the  
Khandish king in combat. With the death  
of their leader, the Khandish horde  
scatters and flees. Suladân claims the  
Khandish ruler's armour for his own.

3012 The Lords of Umbar offer Suladân  
command of the Great Army of Harad  
that they are assembling for Sauron. The  
chieftain refuses and returns to the  
Khandish border.

3017 Sauron's influence touches the Khandish  
kings. Alliance of Harad and Khand  
begins. Suladân returns to Badharkhan.

3018 Suladân is offered command of the  
Great Army of Harad once more. When  
he refuses a second time, Drôzhna has  
his family imprisoned. Suladân accepts  
command to ensure their release.

3019 The Haradrim army marches north.  
Suladân slays Kharid Drôzhna and takes  
control of the army. The Battle of the  
Pelennor Fields. Death of Suladân.



# Chronicles of Middle-earth

*The Order of the Hâsharii by Mat Ward*

At the heart of the City of Corsairs stands Hsar Karnak, the Silent Tower, home of the order of Hâsharii. The despotic lords who rule Harad exercise their will through this ancient order. To question the will of the Hâsharii almost certainly leads to death.

Bring ink to paper this day to speak of the Hsar Karnak, the Silent Tower that stands in the heart of the City of the Corsairs. Made from polished white marble, this edifice reaches many hundreds of feet in the sky, and towers above all else in the city save those towers and palaces belonging to the Lords of Umbar and the council chamber itself. Where many of the buildings in the city of Umbar reflect its Númenórean origin, the Hsar Karnak is something else entirely, crafted after the fashion of the great Haradrim cities, most of which have long since been destroyed by conflict. Strangely, even when compared with the ruins that remain of places such as Kârna, the Hsar Karnak seems somehow different, a discordance that goes far beyond the normal five senses and rests with unease deep within the mind of he who beholds it. I know, for I set eyes upon it once and, though it was many years ago, the sense of unease I felt has stayed with me. Perhaps most discomforting is the silence that surrounds the tower, peculiar in a

city as vibrant as Umbar. The overall effect is to make this imposing structure seem something alien and otherworldly, even within the mélange that is the city-state of Umbar. Some tales would credit that this building predates all but the oldest havens of the Elves, and though I can find nothing to support this wild claim, there is an unquestionable presence commanded by the Hsar Karnak that cannot be denied.

This tower is no less imposing in function than in aspect, for it is home to the Hâsharii, an order that is by no means a force for good in the affairs of Harad. Their origins are shrouded in time, and while there is no better defence against prying eyes, even ones so well-intentioned as my own, the taint of the Dark Lord has never been as subtle as he believes it to be.

Of the history of the Hâsharii, there is little I can say with certainty. In the records of Minas Tirith there are scattered references from more than fifteen hundred years ago that a cult was born in the poor areas of the Umbar and Harad, a cult that preached resistance to the then occupying forces of Gondor. Popular rumour has long since attributed their inception to the machinations of Sauron, although I remain unconvinced. Though they took the Dark Lord's name as their rallying cry, what could be more natural to a people oppressed by Gondor than to look to Gondor's greatest enemy for deliverance? I do not argue that this cult swiftly became one of Sauron's many tools but,

undeniable manipulator though he is, I believe that we all too often credit him with greater foresight than he truly has. It can, after all, be as dangerous to overestimate your enemy, as to underestimate him.

This cult played a pivotal role in the uprising against Gondor, when the northerners were cast from Harad forever, for its agents were skilled in the arts of silent death, indeed the name 'Hâsharii' or Silent Ones, appears to date from this time. Their masterful command of stealth and assassination enabled them to eliminate many of the client kings that Gondor had installed, making the outcome of the rebellion a foregone conclusion.

In the following years, the cult grew into a great and powerful creature, the more so when the restored Lords of Umbar bent it to their will. From that point onwards, the Hâsharii seem to have become personal agents to the Lords and were soon their tool to control the people of Harad. To cross a Hâsharin is to sentence oneself to death, or so it is said, for they have the authority to order executions of any they believe to be disloyal. Common rumour has it that in a deep chamber within the Hsar Karnak there is a room full of records and scrolls, each detailing the transgressions of the prominent citizens of Harad. I find this incredible, for such a task would require painstaking organisation, but if the Hâsharii are judged by what they have achieved, then it becomes far harder to question the veracity of these rumours.



*A Haradrim Chieftain leads the Haradrim under the watchful eye of a Hâsharin*



How many people have been undone by the vigilance of the Hâsharii none can truly say, but when I travelled in Harad it seemed every family there could name one of their who had been taken for treason. I suspect the order itself has probably long lost count of those it has judged and executed. To my mind, the Lords of Umbar have created a deadly two-bladed sword in giving such power to the Hâsharii, for who can truly know where their loyalties lie? Even now, their influence continues to grow in Harad, for they have apparently taken authority over many of the cities and warbands. As to the whispers that they have begun to prosper further afield, in the south and amongst the tribes of the Mahûd, I can only hope that my sources are mistaken. Furthermore, I have heard many rumours that at least one of the senior Hâsharii is primarily loyal to Sauron, and not to the Lords, but who can truly say if this is so? I cannot help but wonder who it is that truly rules in the south. As I have previously stated, whether the Hâsharii were a sept borne of Sauron's will, or simply one that he guided to his own purpose, I do not truly know. In many ways, it matters little for, from the earliest date that they came to my attention, the men oath-sworn to the Hâsharii have been nothing save a force for evil. In the years that I have walked the earth, I have often given thought as to what separates those of us who would do good from those who hold only ill-will towards their fellows. To such questions there is no simple answer, but I do sincerely believe that the actions of men often define the end towards which a nation strives.

How many people have been undone by the vigilance of the Hâsharii none can truly say, but when I travelled in Harad it seemed every family there could name one of their who had been taken for treason. I suspect the order itself has probably long lost count of those it has judged and executed. To my mind, the Lords of Umbar have created a deadly two-bladed sword in giving such power to the Hâsharii, for who can truly know where their loyalties lie? Even now, their influence continues to grow in Harad, for they have apparently taken authority over many of the cities and warbands. As to the whispers that they have begun to prosper further afield, in the south and amongst the tribes of the Mahûd, I can only hope that my sources are mistaken. Furthermore, I have heard many rumours that at least one of the senior Hâsharii is primarily loyal to Sauron, and not to the Lords, but who can truly say if this is so? I cannot help but wonder who it is that truly rules in the south. As I have previously stated, whether the Hâsharii were a sept borne of Sauron's will, or simply one that he guided to his own purpose, I do not truly know. In many ways, it matters little for, from the earliest date that they came to my attention, the men oath-sworn to the Hâsharii have been nothing save a force for evil. In the years that I have walked the earth, I have often given thought as to what separates those of us who would do good from those who hold only ill-will towards their fellows. To such questions there is no simple answer, but I do sincerely believe that the actions of men often define the end towards which a nation strives.



The despotic lords who rule Harad exercise their will through the Hâsharii, an order founded in Sauron's name. Any decision taken by the Lords of Umbar, no matter how trivial, must be ratified by a member of the Hâsharii order, and any attempt to skirt their authority is always noticed and remembered. To frequently question or contradict the will of a Hâsharin leads to death, whether by public execution, or through the quiet application of their murderous skills.



A Hâsharin leads the Haradrim to do Sauron's will

Casting aside the transgressions and deeds of the past, it takes little wisdom to perceive that Sauron holds much the same goal as other, more virtuous, powers. Though their differing motives for action are separated by a vast chasm that is not easily spanned, they all seek to unite the peoples of this world under one banner. The aims are much the same, but the difference between the two sides is as much how they attempt to achieve their goals, as why they wish to. Where some attempt to move the pieces in this, the grandest of games, to their proper place on the board through reason and cooperation, Sauron chooses to dictate their actions through fear and malice.

It is this, more than anything else, which betrays his influence upon the Hâsharii, for they have grown into an instrument of dominance. If Sauron and his vassal Lords of Umbar are the spider, then the Hâsharii are the web upon which they perch, ever sensitive to the tiniest of tremors sparked by the merest rebellion in thought or will. While it is foolishness to say that men are not capable of great evil when left to their own ends, history teaches us that this pattern is one that Sauron has provoked through all the ages and countries of this world. Not just in the land of Harad alone, but in Angmar and in Númenor, and countless others.

## Hâsharin (Man)

Points Value: 90

	F	S	D	A	W	C
Hâsharin	5/3+	4	4	3	2	4

Might:	1
Will:	1
Fate:	3

## Wargear

Hâsharii carry a wide array of poisoned blades, throwing daggers, and a blowpipe (treat it as a bow with a range of 12"/28cm).

## Special Rules

**The Bane of Kings.** The weapons of the Hâsharii are coated with a deadly poison, far more potent than that commonly used by other warriors. Each time a Hâsharin strikes a model with a shooting or close combat attack, but fails to wound, he must re-roll the D6.

**Stalk Unseen.** Hâsharii learn to walk silently and stealthily through all manner of terrain. A Hâsharin always counts as wearing an Elven cloak (see the entry under Frodo's rules in the main rules manual).

**Preternatural Agility.** Hâsharii are graceful and elegant fighters, able to dart aside from the thrust of a blade with ease and strike through the gaps in a foe's armour with pinpoint accuracy. To represent this dexterity in gaming terms a Hâsharin can never be trapped whilst still standing.

*"Lords and Kings are as shifting as the breeze, but we Hâsharii are unchanging and inevitable."*

Kharid Drôzhna



# Battle Companies

*Creating your own Fellowship and using them in a campaign*

In last month's issue of White Dwarf, Adam Troke revealed how to use the forces of Mordor and Gondor with the release of the 'Battle Companies' trial rules. This month, he turns his attention to the mighty Uruk-hai and the valiant warriors of Rohan.

Hello again. Last month saw the first instalment of The Lord of The Rings Battle Companies, and hopefully everyone has made the most of this chance to play exciting new scenarios and games with their collections of The Lord of The Rings miniatures. I promised that I would publish further extensions to this game, and this White Dwarf sees me honouring that. What you'll find over the course of the next few pages is all the rules that you'll need to play with the Battle Companies of Isengard and Rohan and two new scenarios in which to use your growing companies.

All the tables and options that you need to use these two new Battle Companies are contained within this article, so by simply combining the information in the following pages with last month's instalment, you have everything you need to play.

So if you just need the new scenarios, grab your opponent, roll a D6 and play the corresponding scenario from the five on offer (rolling a 6 simply means roll again).

If you're itching to begin a Battle Company of Isengard or Rohan then read on, there's plenty to enjoy!



*The Uruk-hai prepare to clash with the steel of Rohan.*



# Isengard Battle Company

When Saruman the White, wisest of all the Istari, fell from grace and cast his lot in with the Red Eye of Mordor he given the key to creating an army bred for destruction. The Uruk-hai, mightiest of all the Orcs, were reared in huge numbers in the caverns beneath Orthanc, and there Saruman created his evil army.

Intent of doing the bidding of his new master, Saruman unleashed his creations into the world. Hacking and burning, they wrought devastation, separating into small roving bands seeking out weakly-defended villages and attacking at random.

An Isengard Battle Company represents such a group of raiders – Orcs, fighting Uruk-hai and men of Dunland – descending on Rohan with unbridled cruelty and aggression. As the company gains momentum and inflicts damage on it's enemies the cruel minions of Saruman flock to it, swelling it's ranks with vile warriors.

*Isengard Battle Companies: Wild Men of Dunland and Orc warriors within an Isengard Battle Company do not receive promotion in the same way as the Uruk-hai. On a 1-8 there is no promotion. On a 9+ they become Heroes in the same way as normal.*



A starting force for the forces of Isengard.

## Isengard Starting Force

- Uruk-hai with hand weapons and shields
- Uruk-hai with Orc bows

## Isengard Equipment Options

Weapon	Cost in Influence dice
Orc Bow	1
Crossbow – Orc Heroes only	2
Longbow – Warg Rider only	1
Shield	1
Warrior – Orcs only	1
Crossbow – Uruk-hai Hero only	1
Two-handed weapon – Orc/Dunlending only	1

## Isengard Influence Table

D6	Result
1	No reinforcements
2	Wild Man of Dunland
3	Orc Warrior with spear, bow, shield or two-handed weapon
4	Uruk-hai with Orc bow
5	Uruk-hai with shield
6	Roll again on the table below

D6	Result
1-2	Orc Tracker
3-4	Mordor Uruk-hai
5-6	Warg Rider

## Isengard Advance Table

D6	Effect
1	<b>Might/Will.</b> The controlling player rolls a dice. On a 1-3 the Hero gains one Might point. On a 4-6 he gains one Will point.
2	<b>Favour of the White Hand.</b> When rolling on the Influence table, one Influence dice can be re-rolled for each Hero with this ability in the Company.
3	<b>Blade Master.</b> The Hero may re-roll one dice per turn to see which side wins a fight.
4	<b>Courageous.</b> The Hero may re-roll all failed Courage tests.
5	<b>Heedless Determination.</b> Each time this Hero suffers a wound, they may roll a dice. On a 6 the wound is ignored, exactly as if a Fate roll had been passed.
6	<b>Might.</b> The Hero gains one Might point.

## Isengard Promotion Table

Uruk-hai with Orc bow	Uruk-hai with crossbow – Exchange the Warrior's Orc bow for a crossbow.
Uruk-hai with hand weapon and shield	Uruk-Hai Berserker – Alter the Warrior's statistics appropriately. All weapons and equipment are exchanged for the equipment of an Uruk-hai Berserker.



# Rohan Battle Company

The brave warriors of Rohan have long resisted the darkness. Sturdy and strong, the people of Rohan make excellent warriors, and take great pride in their skill at arms. Through time they have fought against the Orcs, the Dunlendings, Easterlings and the mighty Uruk-hai of Saruman. Despite all this, they have prevailed thanks to their long friendship with Gondor and the might of their people.

The military of Rohan is divided into Éoreds, these comprising of knights and warriors, loyal to one of the Marshals of the Mark who ride to battle beneath his banner. To be accepted into the Éored of a Marshal is a great honour, something that every warrior of the Rohirrim aspires to, and often warriors who seek this honour will find themselves assigned to a Battle Company for a time, to prove their worth and valour against Rohan's many enemies.

**Rohan Special Rule: Expert Rider.** Any Warrior or Hero of Rohan who has purchased a horse is considered to be an Expert Rider. Add this to their profile when they gain a horse.



## Rohan Starting Force

- 2 Warriors of Rohan with bows
- 3 Warriors of Rohan with hand weapons and shields
- 3 Warriors of Rohan with throwing spears and shields

## Rohan Promotion Table

**Warrior of Rohan with bow**

**Warrior of Rohan with throwing spear and shield**

**Warrior of Rohan with hand weapon and shield**

**Rider of Rohan** – All weapons and equipment are exchanged for the equipment of a Rider of Rohan.

**Rohan Royal Guard** – Alter the Warrior's statistics appropriately. Include the special rule: Bodyguard. May be equipped with a throwing spear at cost indicated.

**Rohan Royal Guard** – Alter the Warrior's statistics appropriately. Include the special rule: Bodyguard. May be equipped with a throwing spear at cost indicated.



A starting force for the forces of Rohan.

## Rohan Influence Table

### D6 Result

- 1 No effect
- 2 Warrior of Rohan with shield
- 3 Warrior of Rohan with shield & throwing spear
- 4 Warrior of Rohan with bow
- 5 Choose one of the above
- 6 Roll again on the table below

### D6 Result

- 1-2 Rider of Rohan
- 3-4 Rohan Royal Guard
- 5-6 Rohan Royal Guard on horse

## Rohan Equipment Options

### Weapon

### Cost in Influence dice

- Bow 1
- Horse – Hero and Royal Guard only 2
- Throwing spear 1
- Shield 1

## Rohan Advance Table

### D6 Effect

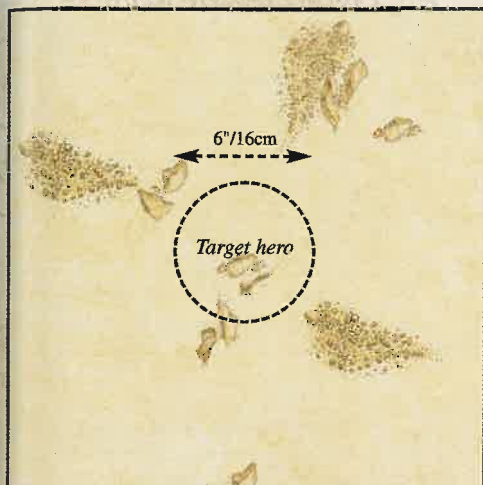
- 1 **Might/Will.** The controlling player rolls a dice. On a 1-3 the Hero gains one Might point. On a 4-6 he gains one Will point.
- 2 **Favour of the Court.** When rolling on the Influence table, one Influence dice can be re-rolled for each Hero with this ability in the company.
- 3 **Blade Master.** The Hero may re-roll one dice per turn to see which side wins a fight.
- 4 **Courageous.** The Hero may re-roll all failed Courage tests.
- 5 **Horse Lord.** This Hero may use his Fate points to restore Wounds suffered by his mount, instead of himself.
- 6 **Might.** The Hero gains one Might point.



# Battle Companies Scenarios

## Scenario 4: Rescue

Hero finds himself separated from his main force and under attack from the enemy. As his foes seek to cut him down, his companions race to his rescue. The opportunity is too much for the attackers to pass up, providing they can capture the Hero without too much loss.



### Layout

A 48"/112cm x 48"/112cm board with as much or as little terrain as the players desire. More terrain definitely makes for a more exciting game, but players are free to use their imagination.

### Starting Positions

Each player should roll a dice. The lowest scoring player is the defender and must place one of his Heroes (this is the target Hero) and up to two of his Warriors within 3"/8cm of the centre of the board. The opposing player may place his entire company within 18"/42cm of one board edge.

### Objectives

The defending company must save their Hero. The attackers must try to kill the Hero while he is cut off from his friends. The game finishes at the end of the turn in which the target Hero is slain, or the attacking company is reduced to below 50% of its starting numbers.

### Defender's victory conditions

The defender's Hero if the attacking company is reduced to below 50% of its starting numbers.

### Attacker's victory conditions

The attacking force is victorious if the target Hero placed in the centre of the board is killed.

### Draw

If both sides achieve their objective in the same turn, the result is a draw.

### Special Rules

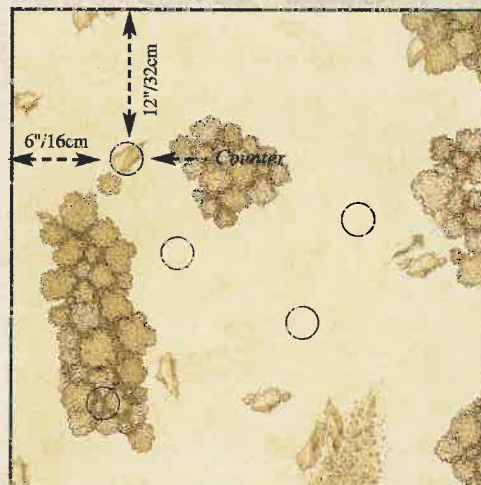
**Priority.** The attacker always has priority in this scenario.

**The rescue!** The company of the target Hero are keen to rescue their leader and leader. They move onto the board from the opposite table edge to the attacking player in the first Move phase.

**Against the odds.** Should the target Hero survive the game he will gain 1 Experience point in addition to the normal amount for playing and surviving.

## Scenario 5: Recovery

An item of power lies somewhere on the field of battle. Whatever the item, the masters of both companies seek its capture, regardless of the costs. Aware their rivals are also scouring the area for the item, the companies will have to act fast to find the item and escape intact.



### Layout

A 48"/112cm x 48"/112cm board with as much or as little terrain as the players desire. Players also need five counters to represent the objective. Scraps of paper or spare bases can be used. These should be numbered on the reverse so that the number cannot be seen from the top.

The players should mix up the counters, and then take it in turns to place them on the table top. They may be no closer than 12"/28cm to either of the players' board edges, and no closer than 6" to either side edge.

### Starting Positions

Both companies will enter play on the first turn.

### Objectives

Both sides must attempt to obtain the item, whatever the cost. Once a Warrior or Hero has it, he must try to 'burst through' and escape from the opposite board edge.

### Victory conditions

The company which retrieves the item, and moves it off of the opposite board edge wins.

### Defeat

Your opponent's company has retrieved the item and escaped successfully with it.

### Draw

Both companies fail in their objective.

### Special Rules

**Cumbersome.** The objective is either very heavy, or sealed in some heavy box. Models carrying it fight as if armed with a dagger and move at half their normal movement. Due to its bulk, the item cannot be carried on a horse or Warg, and any model wishing to do so must dismount.

**There are Glories to be had.** The Warrior or Hero who takes the item successfully off of their opponent's board edge will be well rewarded. A Warrior who carries the item from the board counts as though he has rolled 'Hero in the Making' following the game. If carried off by a Hero he receives a free roll on the Experience table, in addition to other Experience bonuses.



# Boromir's Charge

*A new scenario for The Lord of The Rings by Mat Ward*

Despite Boromir's weakness whilst a member of the Fellowship, his loyalty to Gondor is immeasurable. In such a time of need his bravery is epitomised by his charge into the heart of the Great Army of Harad.

## Description

The Great Army of Harad is beginning to muster on the south bank of the Harnen river. Its intentions are plain – once it has sufficient numbers it will march north on Gondor. The stone kingdom has little chance of deflecting such a blow if it is struck soon. Gondor's armies are scattered to meet threats out of the east and the north – its garrisons to the south are insufficient to block an army the size of the one that now gathers to destroy them. It is in this hour that Boromir, son of Gondor's Steward, steps to the fore. On his own authority he gathers to him the bravest knights of Gondor and leads them on a seemingly suicidal charge into the Great Army's camp.

Once there, he intends to destroy supplies and sow confusion in the ranks of the Haradrim...

## Participants

### Good

Boromir, Captain of the White Tower (does not carry the Banner of Minas Tirith)  
Maethor (Ranger of the North)  
3 Citadel Guard with spear  
3 Citadel Guard with longbow  
15 Knights of Minas Tirith  
*All Good models are on horseback. One Good Warrior may carry a banner.*

### Evil

Drôzhna (Hâsharin)  
Khalemdâr (Hâsharin)  
Mûrithir (Chieftain of Harad)  
Ghân (Chieftain of Harad)  
18 Haradrim Warriors with spear  
18 Haradrim Warriors with bow  
3 Haradrim Raiders with lance  
3 Haradrim Raiders  
12 loose mounts (horses)  
*Two Evil Warriors may carry a banner.*

## Points Match

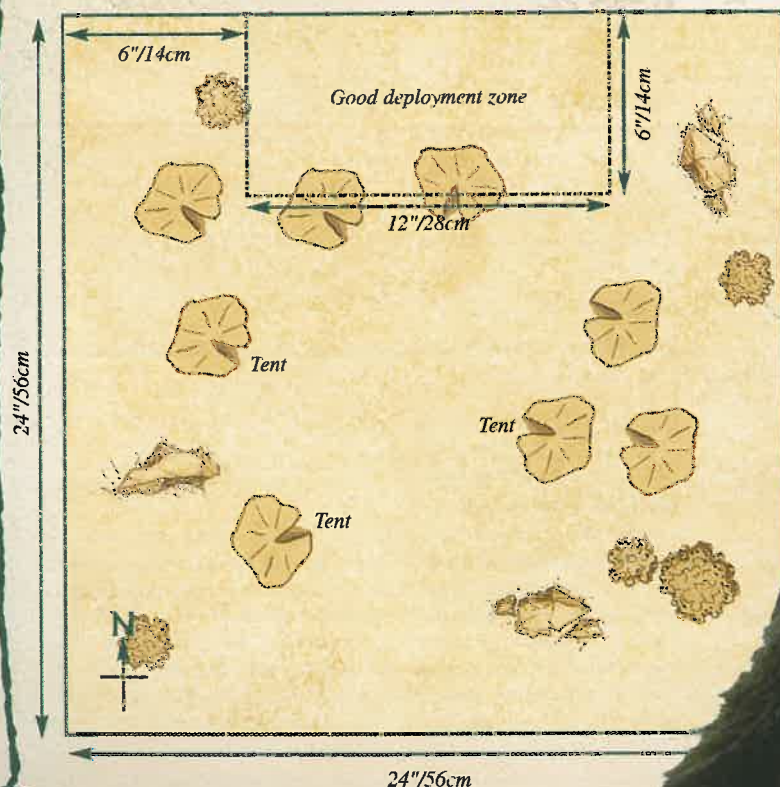
If you want to play this game with other forces, choose 500 points of troops for the Good side and about half as many again for the Evil side. The most expensive model on the Good side takes the role of Boromir while the most expensive model on the Evil side takes the role of Drôzhna. No more than 33% of either force may be spent on warriors with bows.

## Layout

This game is played on a board 24"/56cm by 24"/56cm. Set in the heart of the Great Army's camp the board should have eight Haradrim tents scattered on it. A clear area (about 6"/14cm wide) should be left in the middle of the board.

## Starting Positions

The Evil player first of all deploys his loose mounts within 6"/14cm of the centre of the board. The Good player then deploys his force in the Good deployment zone (see map). The Evil player may





ge

ame with other  
of troops for the  
as many again  
st expensive  
akes the role of  
xpensive model  
role of Drôzhna.  
ner force may be  
ws.

board 24"/56cm by  
of the Great Army's  
eight Haradrim  
area (about  
ft in the middle of

leloys his loose  
4cm of the centre  
The Good player  
s his force in the  
loyment zone (see  
he Evil player may



*The Knights of Gondor sweep away all before them*

may deploy two Haradrim Warriors (of his  
choice) in base contact with each of the tents.  
The remainder of the Haradrim are kept in  
reserve and will be available later in the game.

### Objectives

The Good side wins if Boromir and his  
followers manage to kill all of the horses or  
remove them from the table (see below) and at  
least 25% of the Good models (including  
Boromir) escape the board from the northern  
edge. The Evil player wins if the Good  
player fails to meet his objectives and Drôzhna  
remains alive. Any other result is a draw.

### Special Rules

**Sound the Alarm!** As Boromir's force arrives,  
the Haradrim are slow to sound the alarm,  
giving him time to strike deep into the camp.  
From the start of each of his Move phases after  
the first, the Evil player may roll a D6. On the  
roll of a 4+, the Evil models that were not  
deployed at the start of the game may move  
onto the board from any edge. Newly arrived  
models may not charge on the turn they arrive,  
but may otherwise act normally.

**In the Heart of the Foe.** The Great Army is  
almost numberless and, as the fight continues,  
more Warriors rush to the battle. At the end of

the Evil player's fourth Move phase, and at the  
end of every fourth Move phase thereafter, he  
may replace any Warriors that were removed  
as casualties earlier in the game from any  
board edge. Newly arrived models may not  
charge on the turn they arrive, but may  
otherwise act normally. Heroes do not return to  
play in this way.

**Scatter the Horses!** The horses are  
skittish and easily panicked. At the start of  
each of the Evil player's Move phases, each  
unmounted horse must take a Courage test or  
retreat. Good and Evil warriors may attempt to  
mount the horses as normal if they wish.



# Beasts of War

## Converting the War Mûmak of Harad

The Lord of the Rings film trilogy contains an immense wealth of conversion inspiring imagery. Bryan Cook of Australian Hobby Support has taken inspiration from The Return of The King film to extensively convert the new War Mûmak of Harad. Using common household items and a little research you too can personalise your beast of war.

### Converting the Mûmak

What makes the Lord of The Rings range unique is that it exists in another realm besides gamers tabletops: on film. This means that even non hobbyists can appreciate your latest conversion or paint job, as they know what they are looking at. On the flip side it also allows enthusiastic modellers to really take inspiration from the film and push their converting skills to the limit, capturing what they have seen on the big screen - in miniature.

Drawing inspiration from the Pelennor Fields sequences (who can forget the line of Mûmakil advancing, Haradrim chanting from atop the howdah...) I set about converting the Mûmak to include features from those seen in the film.

### The Mahûd platform

The first step was to convert the front of the howdah to accommodate the Mahûd Chieftain. The Mahûd model can be placed on the bi-forked structure without any converting but he is prone to taking a fall when you move your model (or being "throwing speared" by Eomer). This conversion allows the model to be placed in the howdah with reins in hand, while still on his slotta base.

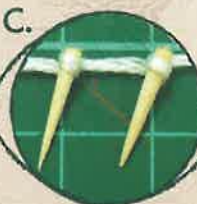
First you will need to remove a section of the howdah. Use a pair of clippers to cut away the front wooden support and the 3cm of hide from either side. It is important to not cut away the floor of the howdah. **Picture A** is a good guide to follow. Next you will need to create new wooden supports like in **Picture A**. The

supports are made from 4 toothpicks bundled together, 3 are then cut to the length needed. One is left longer and glued in the middle of the bundle, this is used to pin the support to the howdah. Use a pin-vise drill to make a hole for your supports pin to slide into. This pinning makes for a strong join. Modelling putty is now applied to join the hide from the existing model to wrap around your wooden supports, the

**B.**



**C.**



**D.**



**E.**



### The Mûmak leg spikes

To construct the leg spikes and later on the tusk weapons the technique is simple. All you need is some string, toothpicks and super glue.

The key to making your leg spikes is making them separately and then stick them to the Mûmak. A set of leg spikes has four spikes on the rope and you will need two of these for each leg, making a total of eight. Follow these steps to make a set:

- Cut the spiky ends off two toothpicks to get four spikes. Make each around 1.5cm long. An easy way to cut them is to first score the toothpick where you want to cut and then simply snap them off by hand.
- Take your string and cut of a length 9cm long.
- Now proceed to glue each spike to the string at 2 cm intervals with super glue.

**A.**



yellow/grey areas in **Picture A** show where the putty was used.

The bi-forked structure needs to be extended to allow the ropes and rigging (more on this later) to not get in the way of the Mahûd. Use the same "toothpick bundle" technique from before to extend the forks out, covering the join by wrapping string around it just like **Picture B**.

Use **Picture C** as reference. As you glue each spike onto the string you can loop the string around each spike while the glue is still wet. This creates a realistic look of the spikes being lashed together.

• After you have made up eight sets of spikes you are ready to stick them on. Use super glue to attach one end of the string to the Mûmak's leg. Then wrap the set around and glue down the other end. You will notice gaps between the spikes, this is what the second set of spikes are for. Take the second set and repeat the process but make sure the spikes align with the gaps from the first set. Have a look at **Picture D** for reference.

• All that is left is to wrap some more string around the sets to make sure they look well lashed on just like **Picture E**.



# War

ad

A show where the

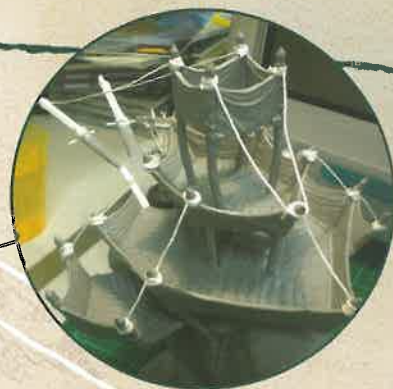
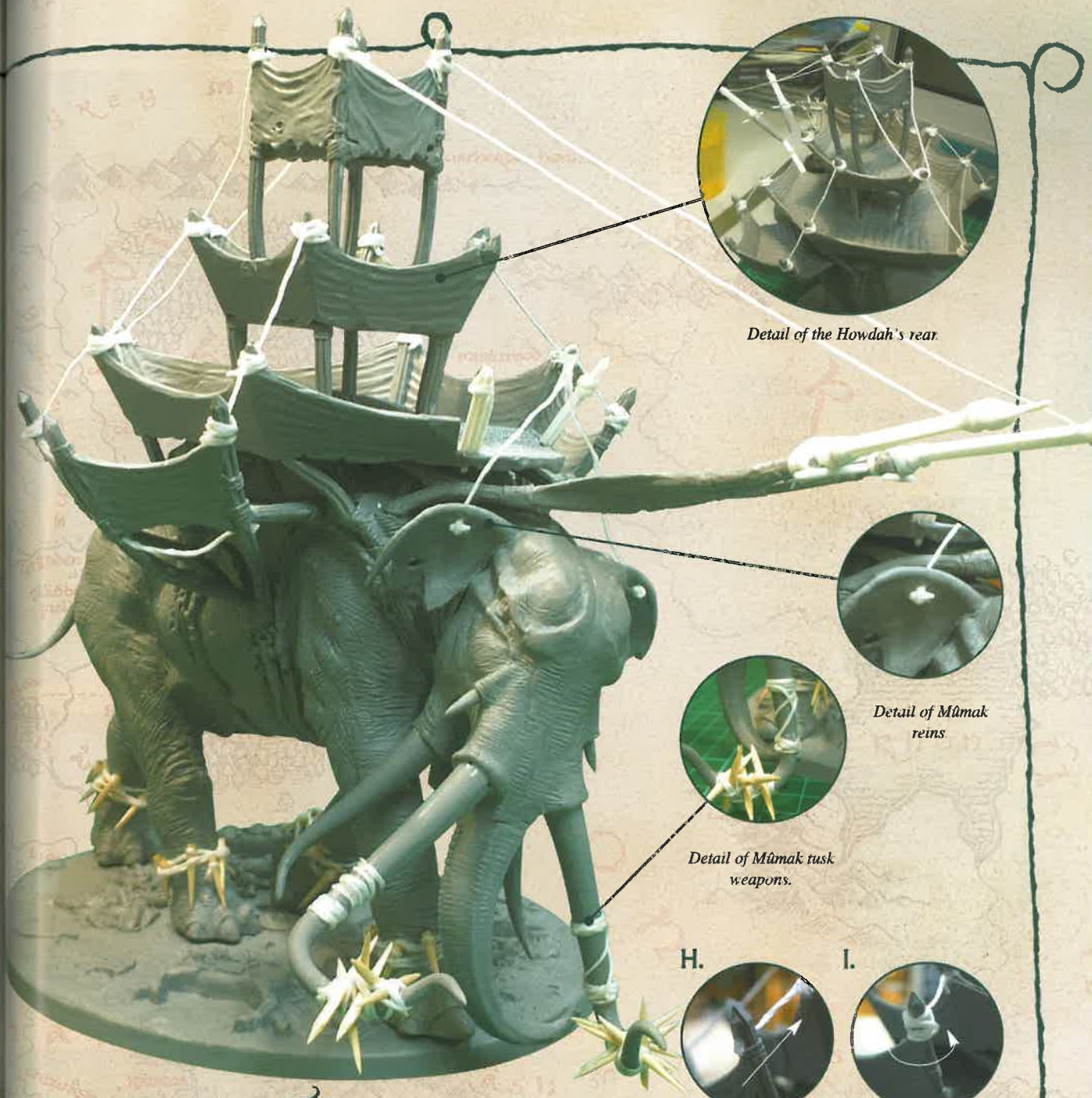
is to be extended to  
(more on this later)  
Mahād. Use the  
technique from before  
joining the join by  
st like Picture B.



As you glue each  
a loop the string  
glue is still wet.  
of the spikes being

ght sets of spikes  
on. Use super glue  
to the Mūmak's  
and glue down  
the gaps between the  
nd set of spikes are  
repeat the process  
gn with the gaps  
ok at Picture D for

ome more string-  
they look well  
E.



Detail of the Howdah's rear.



Detail of Mūmak reins.



Detail of Mūmak tusk weapons.



H.



I.



G.

## Tusk Weapons

A variety of tusk weapons were a great feature in the film - from additional tusks added on, to "lawnmower" style attachments. I decided to go with the "festooned with spikes" option for my Mūmak's tusk weapons. First cut off lots of 3cm lengths of toothpick. You will need to sharpen one end so each spike is sharp on both ends. Super glue the spikes

into place, vary the angles to create the effect shown in picture F.

- Once the spikes have finished gluing simply wrap string around and amongst the spikes to give the impression of them being lashed onto the tusks. **Picture G** shows the end result. You can continue the string up the tusks to make lashings. Some of the Mūmakil in the film featured these rope lashings on their tusks. These might be to strengthen them against splintering or to attach tusk weapons.

## Rope Rigging

One striking feature of the Mūmakil in the film was the rope "rigging" on their howdah. This is impossible to cast as part of the miniature so it is up to individual modeller's to add if they choose. To make the rigging

you will need a Pin-vice drill, super glue and of course the string. Have a look at the pictures at the top of the page to see where I chose to put the rigging. The rigging is done in two stages:

- First a single hole needs to be drilled in all the wooden supports allowing the strings to run through. Thread the rope through the holes and glue into place with super glue just like **Picture H**.
- The second stage involves cutting of small lengths of string and wrapping each around a wooden support, covering up the drill holes and joins. **Picture I** shows the finished look.
- The reins are made in the same way

Once you have finished all the conversion work water down some PVA glue. Using an old brush, paint all the string work and toothpicks with a healthy coat.



## Painting the Mûmak

Painting Lord of The Rings models to look like their film counterparts is always a challenge. This is because the colours you are seeing on film are affected by the characters environment, weather and digital colour grading the filmmaker's extensively use of. Basically it comes down to finding a balance between what's accurate and what looks good in miniature. As there have already been several Mûmak painting articles in previous issues I will instead concentrate on some of the unique features like the War paint.

### The war paint:

Painting the different war paint styles seen in the film is a striking way of personalising your Mûmak. I have stuck to the limited colour pallet the Haradrim used in the film, translated into our colours this meant Red Gore, Chaos Black and Skull White. The Haradrim would have painted these designs on literally by smearing the paint over the large areas by hand. So for the basecoat on these designs a large drybrush was used to "dapple" the colour onto the model, helping to create this rough look. Each design features a different stylised "eye of Sauron", to whom the Haradrim where enthralled.

**War paint Design 1:** This first design uses Red Gore as a basecoat. This is then drybrushed with Blood Red. The glyphs and symbols were painted with Chaos Black and feature a small eye of Sauron.

**War paint Design 2:** This design uses a basecoat of skull white. Chaos Black is used to paint the large "Eye of Sauron" designs on each leg.

**War paint Design 3:** This design uses elements of both with a Red Gore Basecoat and Chaos Black for the stylised "eye".

### The Mahûd:

I must admit the Mahûd driver has to be one of the most manic and entertaining bad guys in all the three films. To capture the look of the actual film Mahûd I limited my colour pallet to subdued browns and reds for the majority of the model. This helped to focus the attention on the head, allowing his fearsome facial designs and manic look in his eyes to really capture the character perfectly. To achieve the look in the eyes you first paint the eye sockets and part of the cheeks and eyebrows Chaos black. Carefully paint the eyeballs Skull white. Finally a small dot of black is painted directly in the middle of the eyeball, try not to let his pupil touch the sides and you will get that crazy eye look!

War paint Design 1



War paint Design 2



War paint Design 3



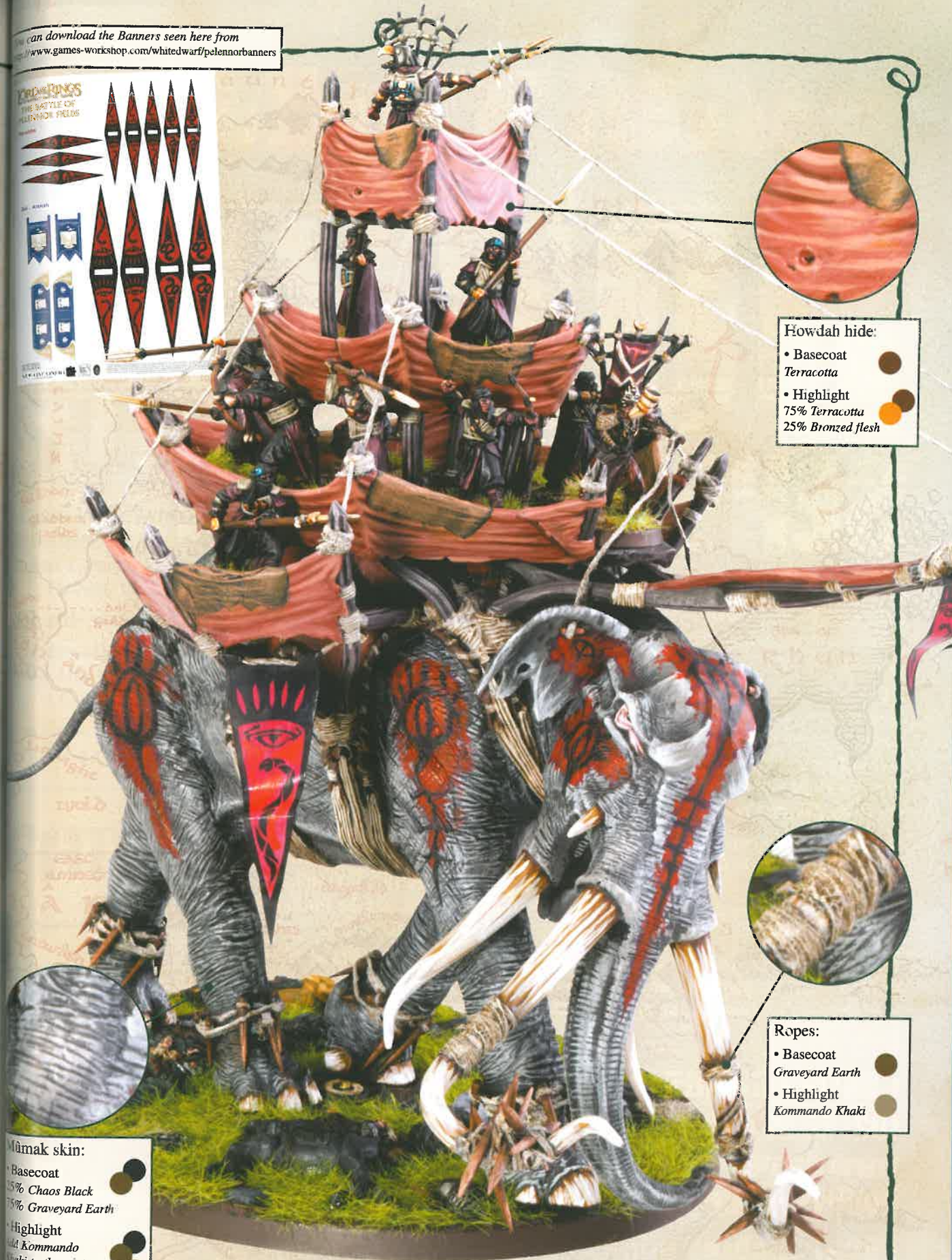
BAG 9



can download the Banners seen here from  
[www.games-workshop.com/whitedwarf/pelennorbanners](http://www.games-workshop.com/whitedwarf/pelennorbanners)



- Flowdah hide:**
- Basecoat  
Terracotta
  - Highlight  
75% Terracotta  
25% Bronzed flesh



- Ropes:**
- Basecoat  
Graveyard Earth
  - Highlight  
Kommando Khaki



- Mûmak skin:**
- Basecoat  
75% Chaos Black  
25% Graveyard Earth
  - Highlight  
Kommando Khaki to the mixture  
several times

The finished War Mûmak of Harad in all its fearsome glory!



# GAMES WORKSHOP

## HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

*What a month! With the awesome new Warhammer 40,000 rules now out, las fire, bolter shells and plasma have exploded across the region. The new rules have taken a great game even further and I'm looking forward to many weekends and evenings of gaming in the 41st millennium.*

*So, whats been happening here? My Sisters of Battle are underway. I'm doing some conversion work on my Seraphim to make them a little different from the norm. Across from my desk I can see Brendan's White Scars taking shape. I'm looking forward to painting his white armour with holy melta fire! Meanwhile, Frank's Imperial Guard look great, modelled in a World War 2 theme and Kev has his Grey Knights ready to purge the heretics.*

*Kev and Bryan from Studio are fighting their way through the Battle of Peleamor Fields scenarios. Lets hope the Hobby Service Centre's track record remains intact, and Studio gets trounced. I'll be heading to MOAB with my Bretonnians. This will be their first outing at a Tournament. Hopefully my dice will be kinder than when I last used them.*

*This month is also the last opportunity to get your subscriptions at the current price. They'll be going up due to the White Dwarf price increase, so start a new subscription, or renew your current one NOW to get the best value.*

DRU

### CONTACT DETAILS:

---

**(02) 9829 6111**

**[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)**

**[hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au)**

### PHONE TRADING HOURS:

---

**Monday - Friday:**

**9am - 6pm**

**Sat, Sun & Public Holidays:**

**Closed**





# WHITE DWARF

## SUBSCRIPTIONS

Did you know White Dwarf subscriptions are available from Games Workshop Hobby Centres?

Just ask staff for details.

Alternatively, you can give the Hobby Service Centre a call.

Australia: (02) 9829 6111  
New Zealand: (09) 302 0279

**AUS\$ 100**

**NZ\$ 120**

**FOR A TWELVE ISSUE SUBSCRIPTION!**

**THERE WILL BE A PRICE RISE NEXT MONTH SO GET IN NOW TO SAVE!**



## FANATIC

Fanatic Magazine is a bi-monthly magazine with articles on all of our Specialist games systems. Only AUS\$110 for 12 issues or AUS\$140 for 18 issues.



Inferno is a bi-monthly collection of short stories based in the various Games Workshop worlds. Only AUS\$66 for 6 issues.



Warhammer Comics is a bi-monthly collection of comics based in the various Games Workshop worlds. Only AUS\$36 for a 6 issue subscription.

## HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

PO Box 576, Ingleburn NSW 1890

(02) 9829 6111

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

[hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au)



# ORDER FORM

***This is your Order Form. All you have to do is fill out this form, stick it in an envelope with your payment and post it to:***

**HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE**  
**PO Box 576 Ingleburn NSW 1890 AUSTRALIA**

[illegible]

***Yes! I would like a 12 month WHITE DWARF subscription. Please start with issue number .....***

**SUBTOTAL****POSTAGE & PACKING**

(Free postage if you are ordering a subscription)

**GRAND TOTAL (SUBTOTAL + P&P)**

Use this form to mail order Games Workshop products and Citadel Miniatures from this or any recent issue of White Dwarf. When you have totalled up your order, please don't forget to add the postage and packing charge. **Please print in block capitals and use a black pen.**

## METHODS OF PAYMENT

**METHODS OF PAYMENT**  
 You can pay by cheque or money order made payable to Games Workshop Oz Pty Ltd. Alternatively, we take Mastercard, Visa, American Express and Bankcard. If you wish to pay by credit card, please fill in the relevant details on the form below. If you have a credit card, you can also place an order by phoning us – but make sure you have your card with you when you phone. **PLEASE DO NOT SEND CASH.**

## DISPATCH & DELIVERY

**DISPATCH & DELIVERY**  
So that you get your games and miniatures as quickly as possible we always dispatch your order via Australia Post. All orders placed before noon are dispatched on the same day. Due to courier costs, we prefer not to sell Spray Cans. If you

really need spray cans, call (02) 9829 5111 and we can give you a quote on courier costs. You must supply a street address when ordering spray cans.

**POSTAGE & PACKING**

**Within Australia:** Add \$5.00 for Standard Delivery (4-7 working days, in Australia) or \$10.00 for Deluxe delivery (1-4 working days, in Australia).  
**Overseas:** New Zealand is \$14.00 (3-10 working days). Hong Kong, Singapore, and most other Asia Pacific countries are charged a flat rate of \$18.00 (3-10) working days. Other countries are charged \$30 (7-28 working days).

**OFFICE USE ONLY:**

\_\_\_\_\_

**Name:** ..... **Address:** .....

**Country:** ..... **Postcode:** ..... **Tel:** .....

**Method of Payment:** Cheque ☐ Money Order ☐ Mastercard ☐ Visa ☐ Bankcard ☐ American Express ☐

**Card No:**

**Card expiry date:**..... **Cardholder Name:**.....

Cardholder  
Signature: .....



.....  
Please feel free to photocopy this form.

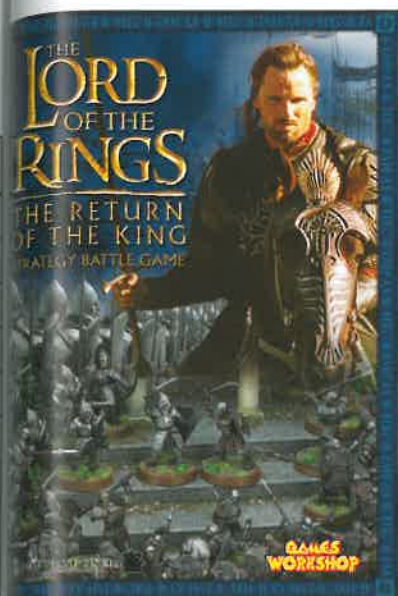
**Did you know that you can place orders via our Webstore 24 hours a day, 365 days a year?**

Visit **www.games-workshop.com** or call **(02) 9829 6111**



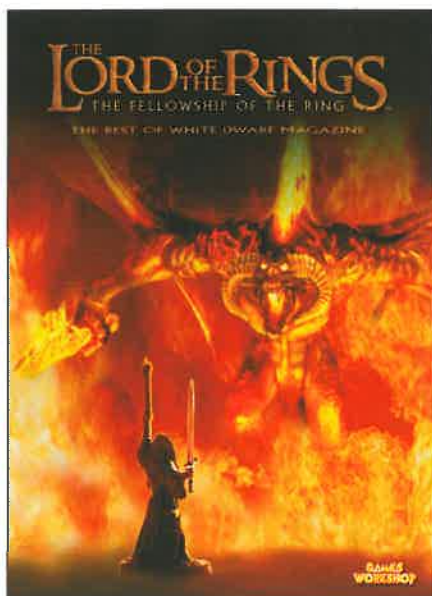
# THE LORD OF THE RINGS

nt and post it to:



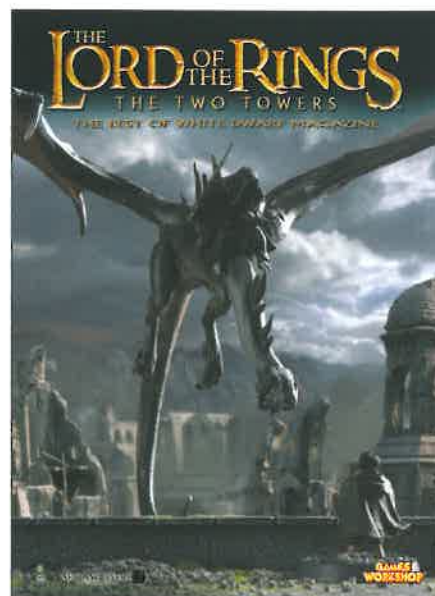
**THE LORD OF THE RINGS  
THE RETURN OF THE KING  
STRATEGY BATTLE GAME**

complete gaming rules, plus scenarios, painting guides and scenery workshops. This rulebook is required to use any of the following supplements.



**BEST OF WHITE DWARF MAGAZINE:  
FELLOWSHIP OF THE RING**

Inside you will find rules, scenarios, painting and modelling advice and even battle reports.



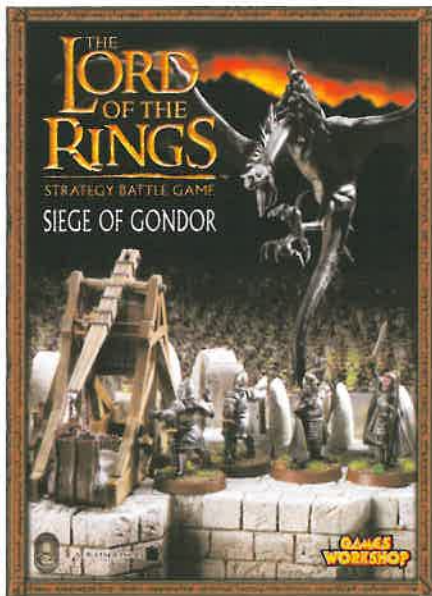
**BEST OF WHITE DWARF MAGAZINE:  
THE TWO TOWERS**

This is the second compilation of White Dwarf articles. It is an invaluable resource for the Lord of the Rings battle game.



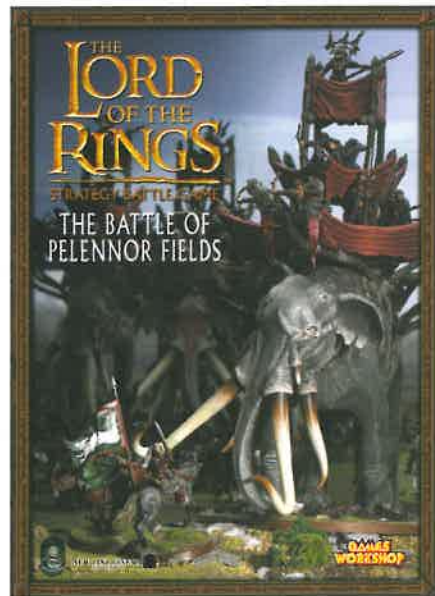
**THE LORD OF THE RINGS  
SHADOW & FLAME**

rules for Balin and his Dwarves, their Hobbit enemies, as well as Barrow-wights, against the Brown and more. It also includes four new linked scenarios and painting tips.



**THE LORD OF THE RINGS  
SIEGE OF GONDOR**

Six linked Scenarios, complete siege warfare rules and new forces of Good and Evil, including the Citadel Guard of Minas Tirith, the brutal Morannon Orcs and destructive Siege Engines.



**THE LORD OF THE RINGS  
THE BATTLE OF PELENNOR FIELDS**

New rules, scenarios and warriors and heroes, including the fearsome Mumakil, courageous Knights of Dol Amroth, and the deadly Hasharii.

## HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

PO Box 576, Ingleburn NSW 1890

(02) 9829 6111

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

[hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au)

All components are subject to availability. All components are only available through the Hobby Service Centre, and prices are charged in Australian dollars. All prices subject to change without notice.



# STARTER ARMIES

## MINAS TIRITH BATTLE COMPANY

AUS\$190.00

- 8 Warriors of Minas Tirith with shields
- 8 Warriors of Minas Tirith with spears
- 8 Warriors of Minas Tirith with bows
- Warrior of Minas Tirith with banner
- Captain of Men with heavy armour and shield
- 6 Rangers of Gondor
- 6 Knights of Minas Tirith (including a Standard Bearer)
- Captain of Men with horse and heavy armour (actually the Mounted Faramir model)

Points: 492



## ROHIRRIM HOST

AUS\$175

- Eomer on horse
- 2 Royal Guard Mounted with spears
- Royal Guard Mounted with banner (actually the Mounted Gamling model)
- 8 Riders of Rohan
- 4 Riders of Rohan with spears
- 8 Warriors of Rohan with bows
- 8 Warriors of Rohan with hand weapons and shields
- 8 Warriors of Rohan with spears and shields

Points: 516





## HORDE OF BARRA-DUR

AUS\$187

- Ringwraith
  - 2 Orc Captains with shields
  - 2 Orc with banners
  - 8 Orcs with bows
  - 8 Orcs with 2 hand weapons
  - 16 Orcs with spears
  - 16 Orcs with shields
  - 3 Warg Rider with spears
  - 2 Warg Rider with bows
- Points: 509



## WHITE HAND OF SARUMAN

AUS\$155

- Lurtz
  - Uruk-Hai Captain
  - Uruk-Hai with Banner
  - 20 Fighting Uruk-Hai with Pikes
  - 6 Uruk-Hai Berserkers
  - Uruk-Hai Siege Assault Ballista
- Points: 530



*These Starter Armies receive half price postage if ordered before the end of October 2004*

# HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

PO Box 576, Ingleburn NSW 1890

(02) 9829 6111

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

[hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au)



# WARHAMMER 40,000 STARTER ARMIES

## TYRANID BIO-HORDE

AUS\$205

"We have given the horror a name to salve our fears: we call it the Tyranid race, but if it is aware of us at all it must know us only as Prey."

- Inquisitor Czevak

### HQ:

- Hive Tyrant

### ELITES:

- 3 Tyranid Warriors

### TROOPS:

- 16 Termagants
- 16 Hormaguants
- 6 Genestealers
- 6 Genestealers
- 3 Ripper Swarms



## BIO-ENGINEERED SUPPORT

Expand your Tyranid Force, and cause terror across the Galaxy!

### ELITE:

Lictor AUS\$35

### FAST ATTACK:

Gargoyle Brood AUS\$18  
(2 per blister)

Ravener AUS\$22

### HEAVY SUPPORT:

Zoanthropes AUS\$22

Carnifex AUS\$55

Biovore AUS\$22  
(6 pack of Spore Mines  
also available for AUS\$14)



Biovore



Ravener



AUS\$205

must know

## SPACE MARINE RAPID ASSAULT FORCE

AUS\$204

With a high proportion of fast moving troops, this force is tailored towards surgical strikes and precision attacks to destroy vital objectives before an enemy force can respond.

### Q:

Space Marine Chaplin with Crozius Arcanum and Bolt Pistol

### ROOPS:

- 8 Marine Tactical Squad with Meltagun and Rhino Transport
- 9 Marine Tactical Squad with Missile Launcher and Plasma Gun

### AST ATTACK:

- 5 Marine Assault Squad with two Plasma pistols
- 3 Space Marine Bikes



## SUPPORT OPTIONS

Reinforce your Chapter and break the enemy. For the Emperor!

### Q:

- The Emperor's Champion AUS\$22
- Space Marine Librarian AUS\$16

### ROOPS:

- Space Marine Scout Squad AUS\$35 (5 models)
- Razorback Transport Vehicle AUS\$55

### HEAVY SUPPORT:

- Space Marine Dreadnought AUS\$65
- Predator Battle Tank AUS\$65
- Space Marine Land Raider AUS\$85



The Emperor's Champion



Space Marine Dreadnought

The Bio-Horde and Rapid Assault Force receive half price postage if ordered before the end of October 2004

# HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

PO Box 576, Ingleburn NSW 1890

(02) 9829 6111

www.games-workshop.com

hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au





## ADVANCE ORDER: SPACE MARINE COMMAND SQUAD AUS\$50 NZ\$55

This multi-part boxed set contains enough parts to make 1 Space Marine Veteran Sergeant, 1 Apothecary, 1 Company Standard Bearer, 1 Company Champion and 1 Space Marine Veteran.



## ADVANCE ORDER: SPACE MARINE VETERANS AUS\$50 NZ\$55

This boxed set contains 5 Space Marine Veterans.



## ADVANCE ORDER: SPACE MARINE ATTACK BIKE AUS\$35 NZ\$40

This boxed set contains 1 Space Marine Attack Bike, which can be armed with either a multi-melta or heavy bolter.

## NEW ZEALAND MAIL ORDER

- New Zealand Mail Order phone line is open between 9:30am and 5:30pm, Monday to Saturday. Closed on Public Holidays.
- For payments to New Zealand Mail Order we accept Cheque, Money Order, Visa, Mastercard and American Express.

- Post and Packing Information: We will ship to all New Zealand accounts within 1-5 days. Postage charges are: North Island: \$5.00 for surface mail, \$7.50 for overnight express. South Island: \$7.50 for surface mail, \$20.00 for overnight express.
- New Zealand customers can call NZ Mail Order on (09) 302 0279.
- PO Box 5995, Wellesly Street, Auckland, NZ.

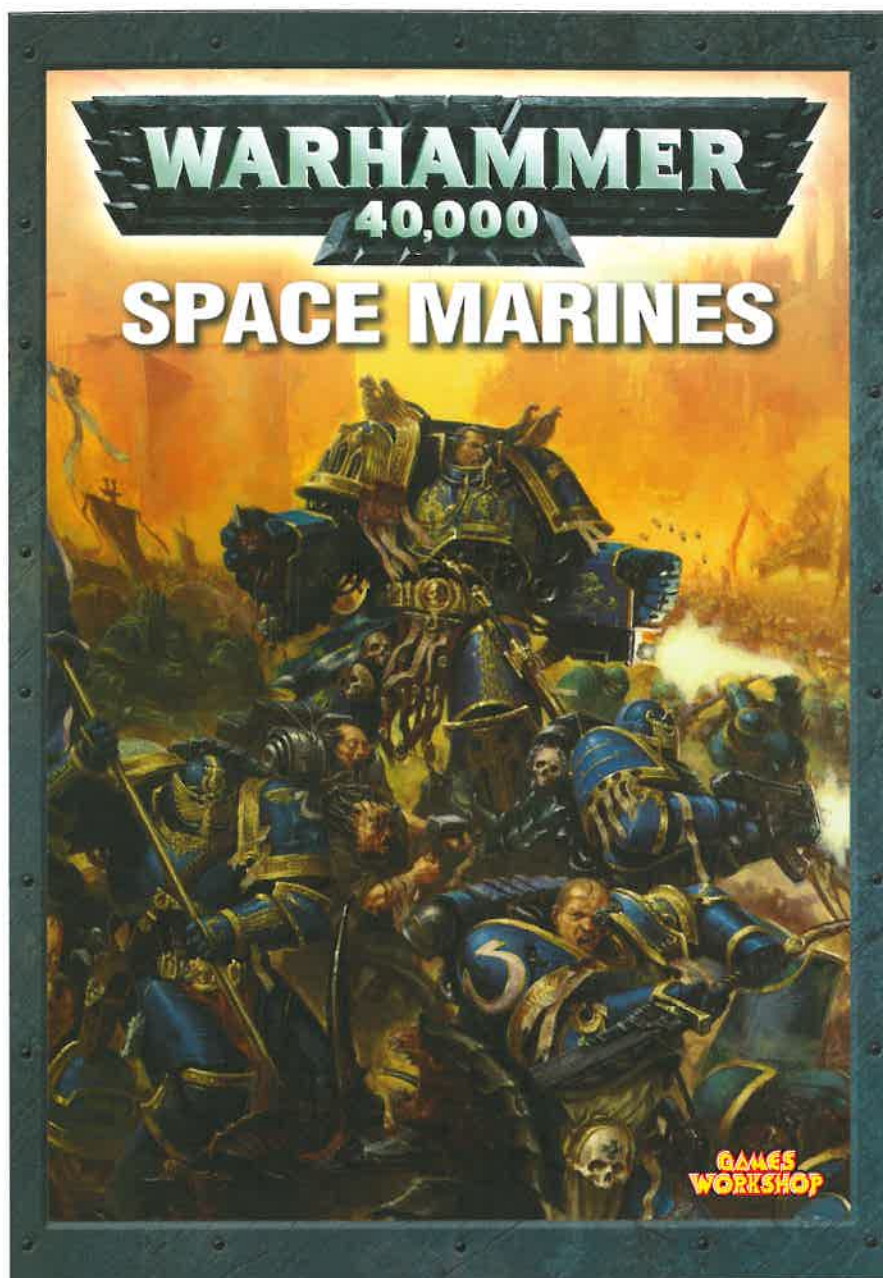


## ADVANCE ORDER: CODEX SPACE MARINES AUS\$38 NZ\$43

In the darkness of the 41st millennium, Mankind is assailed on all fronts by perfidious aliens, degenerate traitors and treacherous rebels. There is no escape from the horror and slaughter, the only alternative is to meet the threats and defeat them. This is the destiny of the Space Marines of the Adeptus Astartes, fearless champions of Humanity and unforgiving crusaders against the enemies of the Emperor of Mankind.

Space Marines are one of the best armies available in Warhammer 40,000. Why? Because they are as hard as nails! A Space Marine's characteristics equal or better those of the elite troops of other forces, combining both excellent hand-to-hand combat skills and shooting accuracy with a zealous determination to never give way before the vile and corrupt foes of Humanity.

This 80-page book contains background, painting and modelling guides, and full rules for fielding a Space Marine force.



### SO HOW DO ADVANCE ORDERS WORK?

1. You place an order for any of the items on these Advance Orders pages.
2. Since you're placing an Advance Order, the postage on it is only half its normal cost within Australia.
3. We'll then send your order out so that you should receive it on the release date.

## HOBBY SERVICE CENTRE

PO Box 576, Ingleburn NSW 1890

(02) 9829 6111

[www.games-workshop.com](http://www.games-workshop.com)

[hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au](mailto:hobbyservice@games-workshop.com.au)



# NEXT MONTH WARHAMMER 40,000 SPACE MARINES

